FORD **EVEREST** Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2016

All rights reserved.

Part Number: EB3B-19G219-YAC 201605 20161128090450

Table of Contents

Introduction
About This Manual....5
Symbols Glossary....5
Data Recording....7
Replacement Parts Recommendation....8
Special Notices....8
Mobile Communications Equipment....9

At a Glance
Instrument Panel Overview....10

Child Safety
Child Restraints....12
Selecting a Child Restraint System....12
Installing Child Restraints....13
Child Restraint Anchorage Locations....14
Child Restraint Positioning....15
Child Safety Locks....16

Seatbelts
Principle of Operation....17
Fastening the Seatbelts....18
Seatbelt Height Adjustment....19
Seatbelt Reminder....19
Seatbelt Maintenance....20

Supplementary Restraints System
Principle of Operation....21
Driver and Passenger Airbags....21
Side Airbags....22
Driver Knee Airbag....22
Side Curtain Airbags....22

Keys and Remote Controls
General Information on Radio Frequencies....23
Remote Control....23
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control....25

MyKey™
Principle of Operation....26
Creating a MyKey....27
Clearing All MyKeys....27
Checking MyKey System Status....29
MyKey Troubleshooting....30

Doors and Locks
Locking and Unlocking....31
Manual Liftgate....33
Power Liftgate....34

Security
Passive Anti-Theft System....37
Anti-Theft Alarm....37

Steering Wheel
Adjusting the Steering Wheel....39
Audio Control....39
Voice Control....40
Cruise Control....40
Information Display Control....40

Wipers and Washers
Windshield Wipers....41
Autowipers....41
Windshield Washers....42
Rear Window Wiper and Washers....42
Headlamp Washers....43

Lighting
General Information....44
Lighting Control....44
Autolamps....45
Daytime Running Lamps....45

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Automatic High Beam Control....45
Front Fog Lamps....46
Rear Fog Lamps....47
Headlamp Leveling....47
Direction Indicators....48
Interior Lamps....48
Ambient Lighting....50

Windows and Mirrors
Power Windows....51
Global Opening and Closing....54
Exterior Mirrors....54
Interior Mirror....56
Moonroof....56

Instrument Cluster
Gauges....58
Warning Lamps and Indicators....60
Audible Warnings and Indicators....64

Information Displays
General Information....66
Clock....71
Trip Computer....72
Personalized Settings....72
Information Messages....73

Climate Control
Principle of Operation....86
Air Vents....86
Manual Climate Control....87
Manual Climate Control....89
Automatic Climate Control....91
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate....94
Rear Passenger Climate Controls....98
Heated Windows and Mirrors....99
Heated Windshield....99
Cabin Air Filter....100

Seats
Sitting in the Correct Position....101
Head Restraints....101
Manual Seats....102
Power Seats....104
Rear Seats....105
Heated Seats....109

Auxiliary Power Points
Auxiliary Power Points....110

Storage Compartments
Cup Holders....112
Glove Box....112
Center Console....112
Overhead Console....112

Starting and Stopping the Engine
General Information....114
Ignition Switch....114
Steering Wheel Lock....114
Starting a Diesel Engine....115
Diesel Particulate Filter....115
Switching Off the Engine....116

Fuel and Refueling
Safety Precautions....117
Fuel Quality....117
Running Out of Fuel....118
Catalytic Converter....119
Selective Catalytic Reduction System....119
Refueling....123

Transmission
Automatic Transmission....125

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Table of Contents

Four-Wheel Drive
Principle of Operation....129
Using Four-Wheel Drive....129

Rear Axle
Electronic Locking Differential....130

Brakes
General Information....131
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....131
Parking Brake....132
Hill Start Assist....132

Traction Control
Principle of Operation....134
Using Traction Control....134

Stability Control
Principle of Operation....135
Using Stability Control....136

Hill Descent Control
Principle of Operation....137
Using Hill Descent Control....137

Parking Aids
Principle of Operation....139
Rear Parking Aid....139
Front Parking Aid....140
Active Park Assist....141
Rear View Camera....145

Cruise Control
Principle of Operation....147
Using Cruise Control....147
Using Adaptive Cruise Control....148

Driving Aids
Speed Limiter....155
Driver Alert....155
Lane Keeping System....157
Blind Spot Information System....161
Cross Traffic Alert....163
Steering....166
Pre-Collision Assist....167

Load Carrying
General Information....171
Roof Racks and Load Carriers....171

Towing
Towing a Trailer....172
Trailer Sway Control....173
Recommended Towing Weights....173
Essential Towing Checks....174
Tow Ball....176
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels....177

Driving Hints
Breaking-In....179
Reduced Engine Performance....179
Off-Road Driving....179
Cold Weather Precautions....184
Driving Through Water....184
Floor Mats....184

Roadside Emergencies
Hazard Flashers....186
Fuel Shutoff....186
Jump Starting the Vehicle....186
Post-Crash Alert System....189
Transporting the Vehicle....189
Towing Points....190

Fuses
Fuse Box Locations....191

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Fuse Specification Chart.....192
Changing a Fuse.....203

Maintenance

General Information.....205
Opening and Closing the Hood.....205
Under Hood Overview - 3.2L Duratorq-TDCi (143kW/194PS) - Puma.....207
Engine Oil Dipstick.....209
Engine Oil Check.....209
Engine Coolant Check.....209
Brake and Clutch Fluid Check.....211
Washer Fluid Check.....211
Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap.....211
Changing the 12V Battery.....212
Checking the Wiper Blades.....214
Changing the Wiper Blades.....214
Removing a Headlamp.....215
Changing a Bulb.....215
Bulb Specification Chart.....220
Changing the Engine Air Filter.....221

Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior.....222
Cleaning the Interior.....222
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....223

Wheels and Tires

General Information.....224
Tire Care.....224
Using Snow Chains.....229
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....229
Changing a Road Wheel.....233
Technical Specifications.....239

Capacities and Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions.....240
Vehicle Identification Plate.....242
Vehicle Identification Number.....243

Audio System

General Information.....244
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/Aux In/USB/Bluetooth.....245
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/SYNC.....260
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/SYNC/Touchscreen Display.....262
Compact Disc Player.....263
Media Hub.....267
Audio Troubleshooting.....268

SYNC™

General Information.....269
Using Voice Recognition.....271
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....273
SYNC™ Applications and Services.....284
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player.....291
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....297

SYNC™ 3

General Information.....307
Home Screen.....319
Using Voice Recognition.....320
Entertainment.....326
Climate.....330
Phone.....334
Navigation.....339
Apps.....346
Settings.....347
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting.....359

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility.....371
End User License Agreement.....373
Type Approvals.....397

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

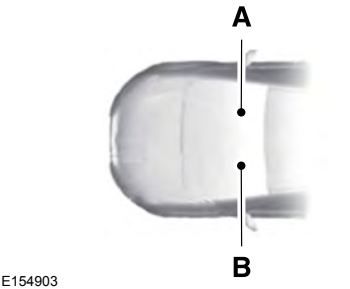
Note: *This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

Note: *Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.*

Note: *Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

Note: *Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.*

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

Safety alert

See Owner's Manual

Air conditioning system

Anti-lock braking system

Avoid smoking, flames or sparks

AdBlue ® System

Battery

Battery acid

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing


Brake fluid - non petroleum based


Brake system


Cabin air filter


Check fuel cap


Child safety door lock or unlock


Child seat lower anchor


Child seat tether anchor


Cruise control


Do not open when hot


Engine air filter


Engine coolant


Engine coolant temperature


Engine oil


Explosive gas


Fan warning


Fasten seatbelt


Front airbag


Front fog lamps


Fuse compartment


Hazard warning flashers


Heated rear window



Heated windshield


Interior luggage compartment release


Jack


Lighting control


Lock rear window


Low tire pressure warning


Maintain correct fluid level


Panic alarm



Parking aid

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing


Parking brake


Power steering fluid


Power windows front/rear


Service engine soon


Side airbag


Stability control


Windshield wash and wipe


Keep out of reach of children


Recyclable product



Do not dispose of in the trash because the material contains lead


Use safety glasses when handling

DATA RECORDING

A large number of electronic components of your vehicle contain data storage modules temporarily or permanently storing technical data about the condition of the vehicle, events and malfunctions.

In general, this technical information documents the condition of parts, modules, systems or the environment:

- Operating conditions of system components (e.g. filling levels).
- Status messages of the vehicle and its individual components (e.g. number of wheel revolutions/rotational speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration).
- Malfunctions and defects in important system components (e.g. lighting and brake system).
- Vehicle reactions in particular driving situations (e.g. inflation of an airbag, activation of the stability regulation system).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature).

These data are exclusively technical and help identification and correction of malfunctions as well as optimisation of vehicle functions. Motion profiles indicating travelled routes cannot be created with these data.

If services are used (e.g. repair works, service processes, warranty cases, quality assurance), employees of the service network (including manufacturers) are able to read out this technical information from the event and malfunction data storage modules using special diagnostic devices. If required, you will receive further information. After a malfunction has been corrected, these data are deleted from the malfunction storage module or they are constantly overwritten.

When using the vehicle, situations may occur in which these technical data related to other information (accident report, damages on the vehicle, witness statements, etc.) may be associated with a specific person - possibly, with the assistance of an expert.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Additional functions contractually agreed upon with the client (e.g. vehicle location in emergency cases) allow the transmission of particular vehicle data from the vehicle.

Note: *Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.*

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

SPECIAL NOTICES

If converting or modifying your vehicle from production specification, please see your authorised Ford dealer.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

WARNING

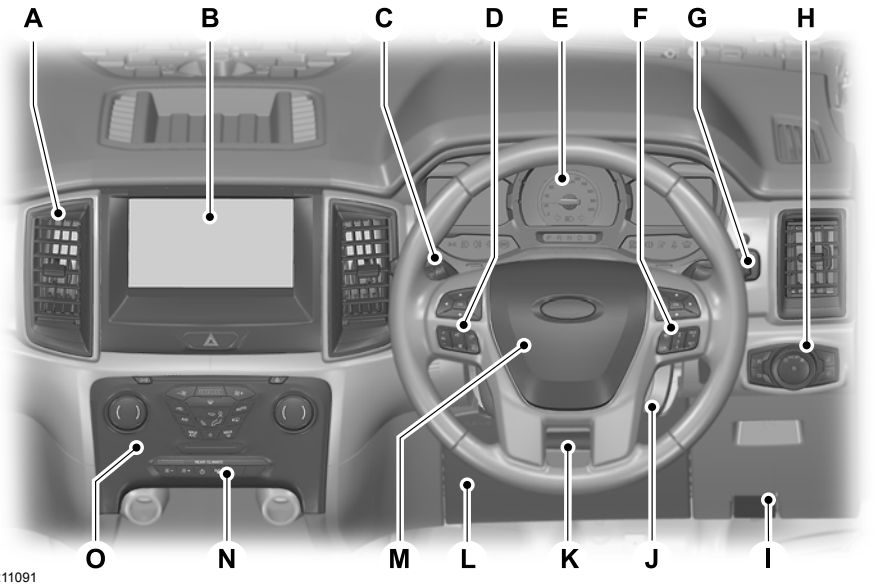
Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW

Right-hand drive



A Air vents.

B Multi-function display. See **General Information** (page 307).

C Windshield wipers. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 41).

D Audio control. See **Audio Control** (page 39). Voice control. See **Voice Control** (page 40).

E Instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 58).

F Cruise control switches. See **Cruise Control** (page 40).

G Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page ?).

H Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 44).

I Hood release lever. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 205).

J Ignition switch. See **Ignition Switch** (page 114).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

K Steering wheel adjustment lever. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 39).

L Driver knee airbag. See **Driver Knee Airbag** (page ?).

M Horn.

N Rear climate control. See **Climate Control** (page 86).

O Climate control. See **Climate Control** (page 86).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

CHILD RESTRAINTS

WARNINGS

Children must always be properly restrained.

This section provides useful information on the installation and safe use of child restraints. Ford strongly recommends that you read and understand this section before carrying children in your vehicle.

It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the children are seated in suitable child restraints prescribed by the laws of the State or Territory in which the vehicle is operated.

If you are in any doubt about the laws that apply in your location, please consult your local Authorised Ford Dealer or Local Approved Child Restraint Fitting Station for assistance.

WARNING

EXTREME HAZARD! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.



E211048

WARNINGS

Seatbelts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather, they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

Read and follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a child restraint.

Do not alter or modify child restraints in any way.

Do not hold a child on your lap when the vehicle is moving.

Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle.

On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

Destroy the child restraint if it has been in a severe crash, even if no damage is visible.

SELECTING A CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM

To provide protection, a child restraint system should meet three requirements.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

1. **The child restraint system complies with Australian Standard AS1754.** Infants and children must be properly restrained at all times in an approved child restraint which conforms to Australian Standards AS1754 - 2004 or later. Look for the Australian Standard Approval Mark on the child restraint.
2. **The child restraint must be suitable for the size and weight of the child and must be properly fitted and adjusted.** Use the child restraint exactly as shown in the instructions provided with the child restraint. If you have any doubts, contact the child restraint manufacturer or consult an approved Restraint Fitting Station.
3. **The child restraint system should fit the vehicle seating position (or positions) where it will be used.** Due to variations in the design of child restraint systems, vehicle seats and seatbelts, all child restraint systems may not fit all seating positions. Before purchasing a child restraint system, it is recommended that the child restraint system is tested in the specific vehicle seating position (or positions) where it is intended to be used. If a previously purchased child restraint does not fit, you may need to purchase a different one that will fit.

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

WARNINGS

EXTREME HAZARD! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

Incorrectly fitted child restraints may swing, tip or come away causing death or injury.

WARNINGS

Do not use a child restraint if the tether strap falls into a split in the vehicle seat back or falls off the edge of the vehicle seat.

After installing a child restraint system, push and pull the system forward and back and from side to side to verify that it is secured.

Be sure to read and follow the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer. If you have any doubts, contact the child restraint manufacturer or consult an approved Restraint Fitting Station. Your automobile club or local vehicle registration authority can provide location details of fitting stations.

When installing the child restraint attaching clip to the anchor fitting, raise the head restraint (where fitted) and pass the tether strap between the head restraint supports. This will prevent the tether strap from falling off the outermost edge of the seating positions.



E166723

Note: *Side curtain air bags will not interfere with a properly installed child restraint system or booster seat, because they are designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window openings.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

When a child restraint system is not being used, either remove it and store it in a safe place, or make sure it is properly secured. An unsecured child restraint system can be thrown around the vehicle in a crash or sudden stop and injure someone.

CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHORAGE LOCATIONS

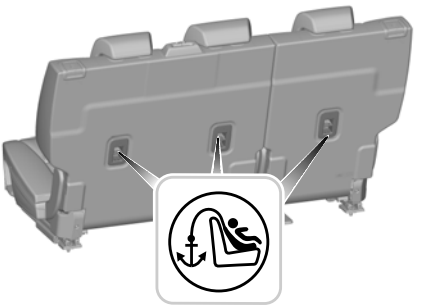
Upper (top tether) anchorages

WARNING

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Second Row Seats

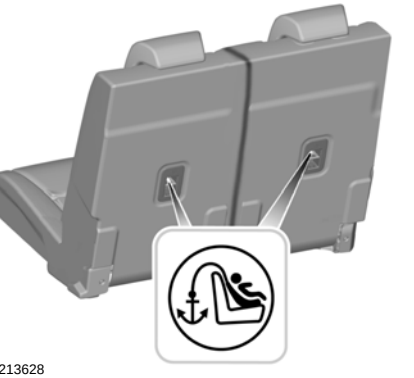
There are three child restraint top tether anchorages on the second row seatbacks., one for each rear seating position, as shown in the following picture.



E213627

Third Row Seats

There are two child restraint top tether anchorages on the third row seatbacks., one for each rear seating position, as shown in the following picture.



E213628

The top tether anchorages are only suitable for child restraints conforming to Australian Standard AS1754-2004 or later. If your child restraint does not have an approved latched hook attaching clip as shown, you should consult an approved restraint fitting station.

WARNINGS

Always ensure that the attaching clip is properly engaged with the anchor fitting and the tether strap length is adjusted to remove any slack.

Always ensure that the locking mechanism of the rear seatback is fully engaged when in the upright position, by attempting to pull it down again.

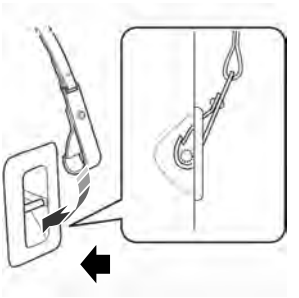
Do not attach a tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor point.

Make sure that the seatback is secure and fully engaged in the catch.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

WARNINGS

Make sure that the tether strap tightening mechanism remains accessible when the seatback is fully engaged in the catch.



E166781

Note: *Arrow points to front of vehicle.*

Note: *Where applicable, remove the luggage cover to ease installation.*

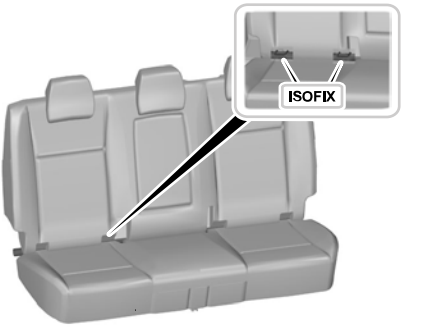
Note: *You may need to raise or remove the head restraint to ease installation. See* ***Head Restraints*** *(page 101).*

ISOFIX LOWER ANCHORAGES (If Equipped)

WARNING

The ISOFIX lower anchorages must be used in conjunction with the upper (top tether) anchorages.

If your vehicle has ISOFIX lower anchorages, they are on the outermost rear seats, where the cushion and backrest meet.



E132631

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITIONING

The rear seats (where provided) are the safest place for children.

When a child outgrows the recommended weight or height limits for a forward facing child restraint system, the child should sit on a booster seat and wear a lap-sash seatbelt. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the centre of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across its hips. A booster seat should be used until the child is tall enough for the lap-sash seatbelt to fit properly.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Typical Booster Seat



E70710

WARNINGS

Do not install a booster seat with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.

Do not install a booster seat with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

CHECKING SEATBELT FIT

If the lap-sash seatbelt touches or crosses the child's neck, then the child needs a booster seat.

WARNINGS

Never wear a seatbelt across the neck. This could result in serious neck injury in the event of a collision.

Do not put the seatbelt under your child's arm or behind its back.

Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height.

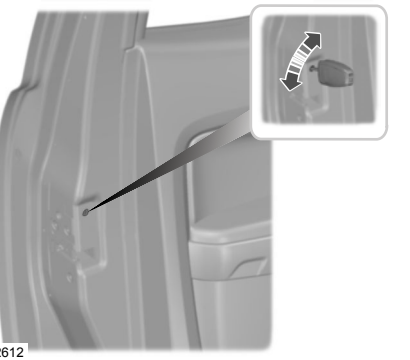
Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

Manual Child Safety Locks

WARNING

You cannot open the doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



E132612

The childproof locks are located on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

The wearing of a seatbelt is a mandatory requirement. Seatbelts should be properly fastened and adjusted before the vehicle is driven. Adjust the driver's seat position before fastening the seatbelt.

Seatbelts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt properly, can it hold you in position to achieve its optimum effect.

Never use a seatbelt for more than one person; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

Use the correct buckle for each seatbelt.

Do not use a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

Do not wear thick clothing. The seatbelt must fit tightly around your body to achieve its optimum effect.

Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the centre of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

WARNINGS

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if the webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seatbelt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seatbelt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

Seatbelts are designed to be used by adult sized occupants.

The driver and front passenger seatbelt systems are fitted with a seatbelt pretensioner. Seatbelt pretensioners have a lower deployment threshold than the airbags. During minor collisions, it is possible that only the seatbelt pretensioners will deploy.

Status after a collision

WARNINGS

Seatbelts subjected to strain, as a result of an accident, should be renewed and the anchorages checked by a properly trained technician.

If a seatbelt pretensioner has been deployed, the seatbelt must be renewed.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

The seatbelt pretensioners at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. The pretensioners also activate when side airbags are deployed.

FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

WARNINGS

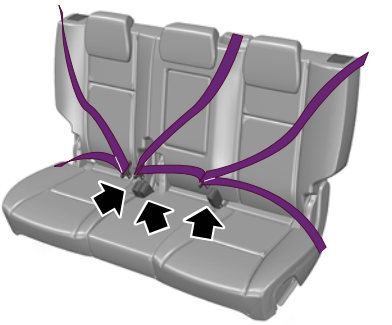
Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click. You have not fastened the seatbelt properly if you do not hear a click.

Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and are not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.



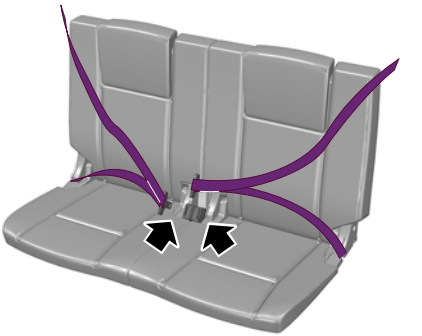
E74124

2nd Row seat



E200940

3rd Row seat



E200941

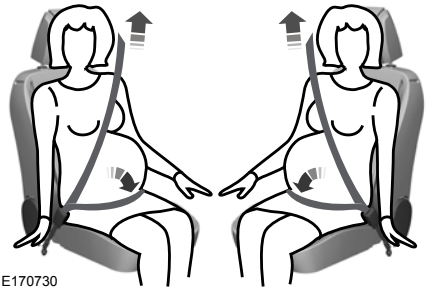
Pull the belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if your vehicle is on a slope.

Press the red button on the buckle to release the belt. Hold the tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

The 2nd row centre seatbelt can lock if you return the seat back from a folded position to the upright position forcefully. Should the seatbelt lock, recline the seat using the recline adjustment. See **Rear Seats** (page 105).

Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy


E170730

WARNING

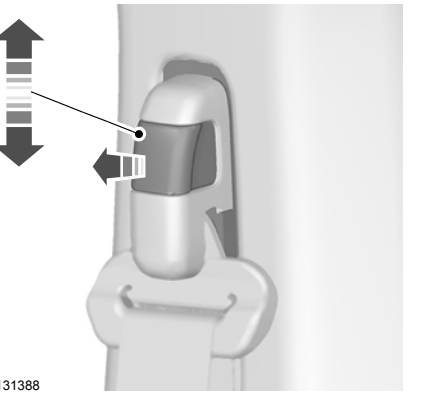
Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.

Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the centre of the chest.

SEATBELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

WARNING

Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.


E131388

To adjust the shoulder belt height:

1. Pull the locking button and slide the height adjuster up or down.

2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SEATBELT REMINDER

WARNING

The system will only provide protection when you use the seatbelt correctly.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing



Type 1: The seatbelt warning lamp will be illuminated for 6 seconds when the ignition is turned on to remind the driver to fasten the seatbelt.

Type 2: The seatbelt warning lamp will be illuminated at any time when the drivers seatbelt is not fastened.

Type 3: The seatbelt reminder warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound if the driver or front passenger seatbelt has not been fastened and the vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed. It will also illuminate if either of the seatbelt is unfastened when the vehicle is moving. The audible warning will go off after five minutes but the seatbelt reminder warning lamp will remain on until the seatbelt is fastened.

Deactivating the seatbelt reminder

Contact an authorised dealer.

SEATBELT MAINTENANCE

Inspect the vehicle seatbelts periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle seatbelts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle seatbelt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front seatbelt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seat back (if equipped), should be inspected after a crash.

Ford Motor Company recommends that all seatbelt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Seatbelt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for seatbelts. See **Vehicle Care** (page 222).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Do not fit a non-Ford approved bull bar or nudge-bar to your vehicle as this may interfere with the operation of the restraint system, including the airbag deployment, and could result in injury to yourself and others. Fitment of a non-Ford approved bull bar or nudge-bar may also void the vehicle's compliance with Australian Design Rules.

Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

See **Principle of Operation** (page 21).

WARNINGS

Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. In the event of a crash, hard objects could cause serious personal injury or death.

WARNINGS

Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use accessory seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer.

Note: *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

Note: *Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.*

DRIVER AND PASSENGER AIRBAGS



E151127

The airbags will deploy during significant frontal collisions or collisions. The airbags will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the airbag will not deploy.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

SIDE AIRBAGS

WARNING

Use accessory seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer.



E72658

Side airbags are inside the seatback of the front seats. A label indicates that side airbags are in your vehicle.

The side airbags deploy during significant lateral crashes. The airbags inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus providing protection for the chest and shoulder areas. During minor lateral crashes, overturns, front crashes and rear crashes, the side airbags will not deploy.

DRIVER KNEE AIRBAG

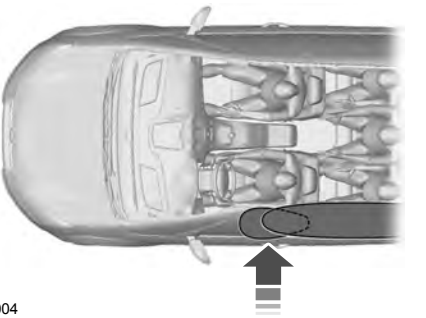
WARNING

Do not attempt to open the airbag cover.

The passenger knee airbags are under the instrument panel. The system works along with the passenger front airbags to help reduce injury to the legs. When the airbags activate in a crash, the knee airbags deploy from under the instrument panel. As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

Make sure the knee airbags are operating properly.

SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS



E75004

Curtain airbags are inside the trim panels over the front and rear side windows. Molded badges in the B-pillar trim panels indicate that curtain airbags are in your vehicle.

The curtain airbags deploy during significant lateral crashes. The airbag inflates within a few thousandths of a second and deflates on contact with the occupants, thus providing protection for the head. During minor lateral crashes, front crashes, rear crashes, or overturns the curtain airbags will not deploy.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 10 m.

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: *Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

Note: *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

REMOTE CONTROL

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

Note: *When you press the unlock button either all the doors are unlocked or only the driver's door and the liftgate are unlocked. Pressing the unlock button again unlocks all the doors.*

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators will flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

Programming the additional key

Note: *You need to have two programmed keys for this procedure.*

1. Insert the first key and turn the ignition on.
2. Remove the key within 10 seconds.
3. Insert the second key within 10 seconds and turn the ignition on.
4. Remove the key within 10 seconds.
5. Insert the additional key within 10 seconds which need to be programmed.

Changing the Remote Control Battery



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority regarding recycling.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Remote Control With a Folding Key Blade

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.



E168254

Press the button to release the key before beginning the procedure.



E168255

1. Insert a screwdriver in the position shown and gently push the clip.
2. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.



E151799

3. Carefully remove the cover.



E151800

Note: *Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.*

4. Insert a screwdriver as shown to release the battery.



E151801

5. Remove the battery.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

6. Install a new battery with the + facing up.
7. Replace the battery cover.

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

Replacement keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 37).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys can be activated with these restricted modes.

Any keys that remain unprogrammed are referred to as administrator keys or admin keys. They can be used to:

- Create a MyKey.
- Program configurable MyKey settings.
- Clear all MyKey features.

When you have created a MyKey, you can access the following information by using the information display to determine:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle.
- The total distance your vehicle traveled with a MyKey.

Note: *Switch the vehicle on to use the system.*

Note: *All MyKeys are programmed to the same settings. You cannot program them individually.*

Non-configurable Settings

The following settings cannot be changed by an MyKey key user:

- Seatbelt reminder. You cannot disable this feature. The audio system will mute when the front seat passengers' seatbelts are not fastened.
- Early low fuel or charge. The low-fuel or low charge warning activates earlier, giving the MyKey user more time to refuel or recharge.
- Driver assist features are forced on: parking aid and Blind Spot Information System (BLIS) with cross traffic alert.
- Satellite radio adult content restrictions.

Configurable Settings

With an admin key, you can configure certain MyKey settings when you first create a MyKey and before you recycle the key or restart the vehicle. You can also change the settings afterward with an MyKey key.

- A vehicle speed limit can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed by fully depressing the accelerator pedal or by setting cruise control.

WARNING

Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

- Various vehicle speed minders can be set. Once you select a speed, it will be shown in the display, followed by an audible tone when the preselected vehicle speed is exceeded.
- Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message will be shown in the display when you attempt to exceed the limited volume. Also, the speed-sensitive or compensated automatic volume control will be disabled.
- Always on setting. When this is selected, you will not be able to switch off AdvanceTrac™ or traction control, 911 Assist or Emergency Assistance, or the do not disturb feature.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

CREATING A MYKEY

Use the information display to create a MyKey:

1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition.
2. Switch the ignition on.
3. Access the main menu on the information display controls. Use the arrow keys to get to the following menu selections:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.
MyKey	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.
Create MyKey	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.

When prompted, hold the **OK** button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted at the next start.

MyKey is successfully created. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

You can also program configurable settings for the key(s). See **Programming/Changing Configurable Settings**.

Programming/Changing Configurable Settings

Use the information display to access your configurable MyKey settings.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key or remote control.
2. Access the main menu on the information display controls. Use the arrow keys to get to the following menu selections:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.
MyKey	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.

Note: *You can clear or change your MyKey settings at any time during the same key cycle as you created the MyKey. Once you have switched the vehicle off, however, you will need an admin key to change or clear your MyKey settings.*

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

You can clear or change your MyKey settings using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

To clear all MyKeys of all MyKey settings, press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the ***OK*** button or the right arrow button.
MyKey	Press the ***OK*** button or the right arrow button.
Clear MyKey	Press and hold the ***OK*** button until the instrument cluster displays the following message.
All MyKeys Cleared	

Note: *When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information on programmed MyKey(s) using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

To find information on programmed MyKey(s), press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:

Message	Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
MyKey	Press the **OK** button.
Select one of the following:	
MyKey Dist.	Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear your MyKeys. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.
{0} MyKeys	Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when a MyKey has been deleted.
{0} Admin Keys	Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many unrestricted keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING

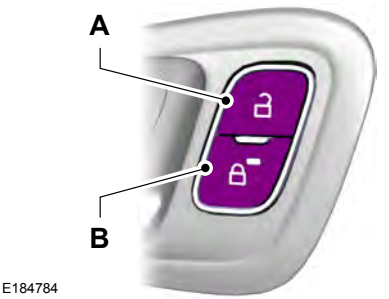
Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot create a MyKey.	• The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle does not have admin privileges. • The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle is the only admin key (there always has to be at least one admin key). • SecuriLock passive anti-theft system is disabled or in unlimited mode.
I cannot program the configurable settings.	• The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges. • No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 27).
I cannot clear the MyKeys.	• The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges. • No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 27).
I lost the only admin key.	Purchase a new key from an authorized dealer.
I lost a key.	Program a spare key. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 37).
MyKey distances do not accumulate.	• The MyKey user is not using the MyKey. • An admin key holder cleared the MyKeys and created new MyKeys. • The key system has been reset.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



A Unlock.
B Lock.

Remote Control

You can use the remote control at any time while your vehicle is switched off.

Unlocking the Doors

Press the button to unlock all doors. The direction indicators will flash.

Note: *You can unlock the driver's door with the key. Use the key when the remote control is not functioning.*

Note: *When you leave your vehicle locked for several weeks, the remote control will be switched off. Your vehicle must be unlocked with key and started. Unlocking and starting your vehicle once will enable the remote control.*

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can reprogram the unlocking function so that only the driver door is unlocked. See **Remote Control** (page 23).

Locking the Doors

Press the button to lock all the doors. The direction indicators will flash.

Note: *If any door or the luggage compartment is not closed, or if the hood is not closed on vehicles that have an anti-theft alarm or remote start, the direction indicators will not flash.*

Autolock Configuration

You can configure autolock and autounlock through the instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 58).

Follow the process below if your instrument cluster does not allow you to configure autolock and autounlock.

Note: *This operation has to be done within **30 seconds**.*

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press door lock button three times.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Press door lock button three times.
5. Switch the ignition on.
6. Press door lock button two times.

A tone sounds twice to indicate that the driver configuration mode is enabled.

Automatic locking by speed

Note: *Automatic locking by speed is disabled by default.*

All the doors lock automatically when you drive at or above 7 km/h.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Press the central lock or unlock button twice within three seconds and wait for three seconds to toggle the automatic locking by speed function. A tone sounds when toggling.

Automatic unlocking

Note: *Automatic unlock is enabled by default.*

Press the central lock or unlock button three times within three seconds and wait for three seconds to toggle the automatic unlocking function.

If the automatic unlocking function is enabled:

- All doors will be unlocked when opening the driver door or front passenger door from inside, with the key in the ignition.

If the automatic unlocking function is disabled:

- Only the respective door will be unlocked while opening from inside.

Note: *Opening the rear doors will never unlock the other doors, when opened from inside.*

Locking and Unlocking the Doors from Inside

Use the lock and unlock buttons located on the driver and passenger doors.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key

Locking with the Key

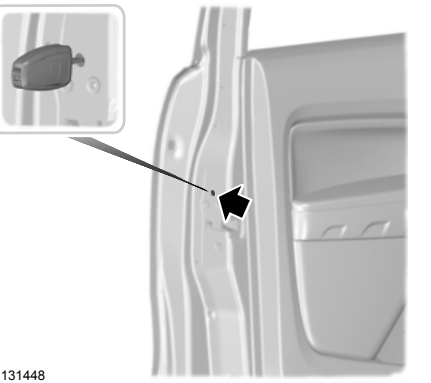
Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

Unlocking with the Key

Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

Note: *If the child safety locks are on and you pull the interior handle, you will only turn off the emergency locking, not the child safety lock. You can only open the doors using the external door handle.*

Locking and Unlocking the Doors Individually with the Key - Vehicles with Central Locking


E131448

Locking

If the central locking function fails to operate, lock the doors individually by inserting the key into the exterior door handle key slot and rotating it.

Left-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

Unlocking

If the central locking function fails to operate, unlock the driver door and then unlock all other doors individually by pulling the interior door handles.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Note: *If the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be locked individually until the central locking function has been repaired.*

Opening the Liftgate

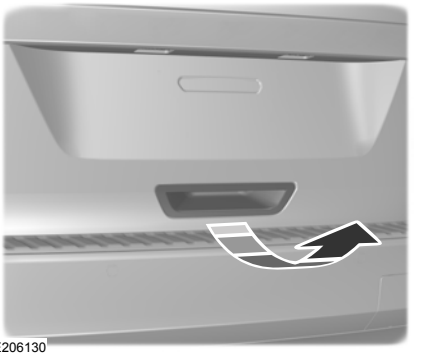
Note: *If the liftgate has been opened using the key after the vehicle has been locked, do not leave the key inside the vehicle and close the liftgate as the key will be locked inside.*

With the Remote Control



Press the button twice within three seconds.

From Outside Your Vehicle


E206130

Press the release button below the license plate to unlatch the liftgate. Your vehicle must be unlocked or have an intelligent access transmitter within 1 m of the liftgate.

MANUAL LIFTGATE

WARNINGS

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seatbelt properly. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

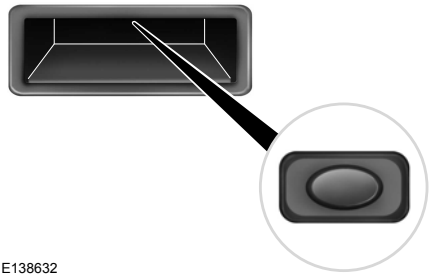
Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Opening the Liftgate

Manually



E138632

Note: *The manual liftgate button must be enabled before it can be used, using the unlock button on the remote control. Press the button twice within three seconds.*

Press the button located in the top of the liftgate pull cup handle to unlatch the liftgate, and then pull on the outside handle.

Closing the Liftgate



E155976

A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

POWER LIFTGATE

WARNINGS

- Do not operate the liftgate unless it is free from obstruction.
- Careless opening and closing of the liftgate can override the protection function and cause injuries.
- Do not place objects on the liftgate.
- Make sure you fully close the liftgate after operation.
- Operate the liftgate only when your vehicle is stationary.

You can operate the liftgate using the remote control, the instrument panel switch, or the liftgate switch.

Note: *Make sure there is enough headroom to open the liftgate.*

Note: *If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, make sure the transmission selector lever is in park.*

Note: *In extreme weather conditions, automatic opening and closing will not work with the liftgate frozen to the seal.*

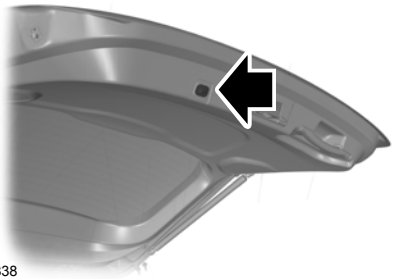
Note: *The liftgate will stop automatically while opening and reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.*

Note: *The liftgate will stop automatically while closing and fully open if there is an obstacle in the way.*

Note: *You can manually operate the liftgate.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Liftgate Switch


E129838

Switch the ignition on to operate the liftgate using the center console switch.

Note: *A tone sounds three times when the liftgate begins to close.*

Five short tones indicate a malfunction with the open or close request. This could be caused by one of the following:

- You switch the ignition on and the transmission selector lever is not in park.
- The battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage.
- Your vehicle speed exceeds 3 mph (5 km/h).

To unlock a fully closed liftgate, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control once.
- Press the center console switch.

To open a fully closed liftgate, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press the center console switch.
- Use the liftgate switch.

To fully open a partially opened liftgate, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press the center console switch or the liftgate switch.
- Use the liftgate switch.

To stop the liftgate, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control. A further remote control operation will be delayed for approximately three seconds.
- Press the center console switch or the liftgate switch.
- Use the liftgate switch.

Closing the Liftgate

WARNING

The bounce-back feature will not work and it will not detect obstacles when the liftgate is in contact with the vehicle body.

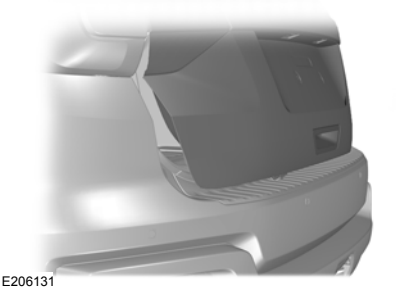
Note: *Do not leave a passive key in your vehicle when closing the liftgate. A message will be shown in the display. See* ***Information Messages*** *(page 73).*

Note: *A recessed grip is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.*

You can either:

- Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press the center console switch or the liftgate switch.
- Use the liftgate release switch.
- Manually close the liftgate

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing


E206131

The liftgate will close automatically when it comes into contact with the vehicle body.

Programming Liftgate Height

You can set the power liftgate height as desired by following the below steps.

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Manually move the liftgate to the desired height.
3. Press and hold the liftgate switch for at least three seconds. A tone sounds when the desired height has been set.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Principle of Operation

The system prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

Coded Keys

If you lose a key, you can purchase a replacement from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain extra keys from an authorized dealer.

Note: *Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys. See an authorized dealer for further information.*

Note: *Do not shield your keys with metal objects. This may prevent the receiver from recognizing a coded key.*

Arming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition off the engine immobilizer will arm automatically after a short time.

Disarming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition on the engine immobilizer will disarm automatically if a correctly coded key is used.

If you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM

Alarm System

Your vehicle may have one or more of the following alarm systems:

- Perimeter alarm with interior sensors.
- Perimeter alarm with interior sensors and battery back-up sounder.
- Inclination or motion sensor to set off the alarm if the vehicle is moved or raised.

Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors, luggage compartment and the hood.

Panic Alarm

The alarm can be activated using the remote control.

Interior Sensors


E133698

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized access by sensing any movement within your vehicle.

Arming the alarm turns on the interior sensors.

Note: *Do not cover the interior lamp scanning sensors.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Note: *Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle, as this could trigger the alarm.*

Note: *Do not leave the glasses holder open.*

Note: *To permanently switch off the interior motion sensor, see an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Fuel fired heater may trigger false alarms.*

Inclination/ Motion Sensor

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized access by sensing any movement within your vehicle.

Triggering the Alarm

- If someone opens a door or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the multi-function display.
- If you switch the ignition on without a valid key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.
- On vehicles with a battery back-up sounder, if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

If the alarm sounds, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning lamps flash for five minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above will sound the alarm again.

Full and Reduced Guard

Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle, as this could trigger the alarm.*

Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

Note: *You can set the alarm to reduced guard for the current ignition cycle only.*

Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

You can switch this feature on or off and adjust the settings using the information display.

Note: *You can set the alarm to reduced guard for the current ignition cycle only.*

The alarm resets to full guard the next time you unlock and then relock the vehicle with the remote control.

Arming the Alarm

Press the lock button once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm.

Disarming the Alarm

Disarm the alarm by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors with the key and switch the ignition on with a correctly coded key within 12 seconds.
- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment using the remote control.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

WARNING

Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position.*



E161488

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.

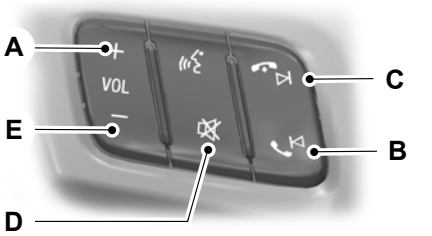


E95179

3. Lock the steering column.

AUDIO CONTROL

You can operate the following functions with the control:



E199065

A	Volume up.
B	Seek down or previous.
C	Seek up or next.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

D Mute.
E Volume down.

VOICE CONTROL



E200787

A Voice recognition.
B Answer phone call.
C End phone call.

See your SYNC information.

CRUISE CONTROL

Type 1



E201284

See **Using Cruise Control** (page 147).

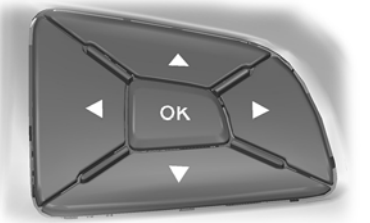
Type 2 (If Equipped)



E248386

See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 148).

INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL



E201420

See **General Information** (page 66).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

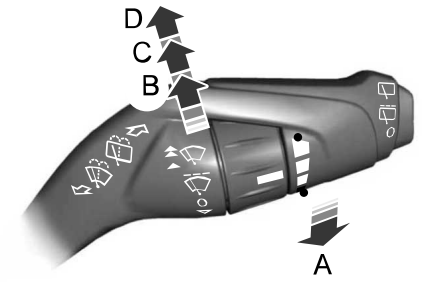
WINDSHIELD WIPERS

Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.*

Note: *Make sure you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.*

Note: *If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.*

Note: *Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.*

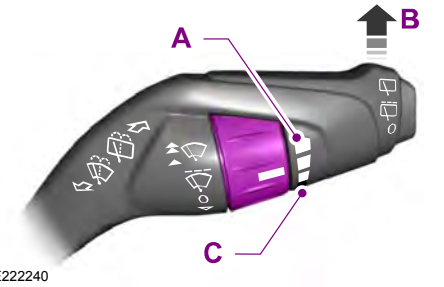


E222239

A Single wipe.
B Intermittent wipe.
C Normal wipe.
D High-speed wipe.

Note: *Move to position **O** to switch the wipers off.*

Intermittent Wipe



E222240

A Short-wipe interval.
B Intermittent wipe.
C Long-wipe interval.

Push the wiper lever up to switch the wipers on, and then use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

Speed Dependent Wipers

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes decreases.

AUTOWIPERS (If Equipped)

Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.*

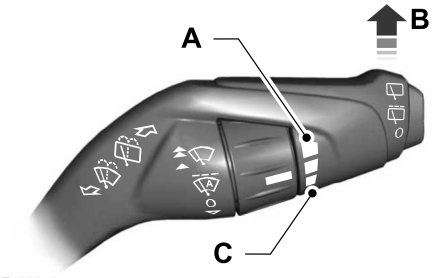
Note: *Make sure you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.*

Note: *If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.*

Note: *If you switch autolamps and autowipers on, the headlamps automatically turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or salty road mist can cause inconsistent and unexpected wiping or smearing.



E168041

A High sensitivity.
B On.
C Low sensitivity.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers. When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield. When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

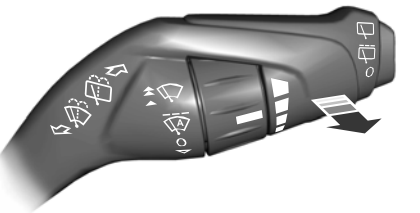
Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

In these conditions, you can do the following:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing on the windshield.
- Switch to normal or high-speed wipe.
- Switch autowipers off.

Note: *The autowipers feature uses a rain sensor that is in the area around the interior rear view mirror. The rain sensor monitors the amount of moisture on the windshield and automatically turns the wipers on.*

WINDSHIELD WASHERS


E168042

Note: *Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.*

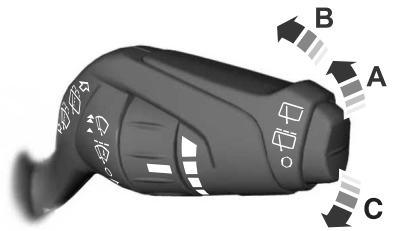
Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washers. When you release the lever, wiping continues for a short period of time.

REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

Note: *Make sure you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.*

Note: *The rear wiper only activates when the liftgate is closed.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing



E168043

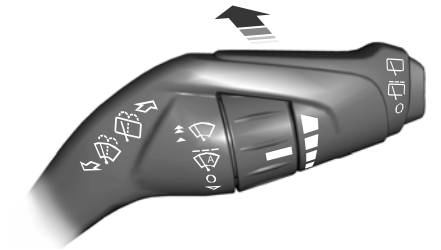
A Intermittent wipe.

B Low speed wipe.

C Off.

When you switch on the front wipers and move the gearshift lever to reverse (R), rear intermittent wipe automatically turns on.

Rear Window Washer



E168044

Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer.

When you release the lever, wiping continues for a short period of time.

HEADLAMP WASHERS

Note: *The headlamp washer system is automatic and does not have a dedicated control switch.*

Headlamp washers operate when the low beam headlamps are ON and the windshield washer is operated, then with very fifth cycle of windshield wash.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Condensation in the Exterior Front Lamps and Rear Lamps

Exterior front lamps and rear lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

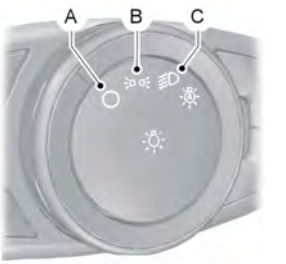
- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

LIGHTING CONTROL

Note: *Prolonged use of the position lamps with the ignition is off causes the battery to run out of charge.*

Note: *Switch on the position lamps within 10 minutes from key removal. Reinsert the key if you exceed 10 minutes.*



E142449

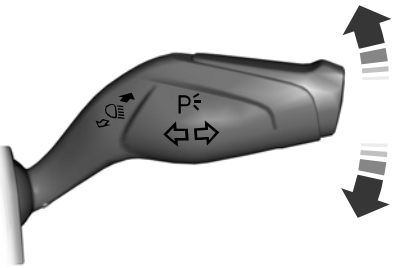
A Off.

B Position lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.

C Headlamps.

Single Side Position lamps

Note: *Single side position lamps operate with the ignition on or off.*



E211866

Move the lever up or down to switch on the desired single side parking lamp.

Headlamp High Beam

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

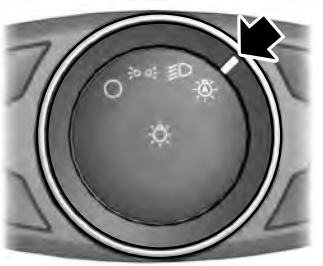
Headlamp Flasher

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

AUTOLAMPS

WARNING

The autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Always ensure that your headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.



E142451

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps automatically turn on in low light situations or when the wipers turn on.

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you can switch on the following in the information display:

- Configurable daytime running lamps.
- Automatic high beam control.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on.

Note: *If you switch on the autolamps, you cannot switch the high beam headlamps on until the autolamps system turns the low beam headlamps on.*

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

WARNING

The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Also, the autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Make sure the headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

The system turns the lamps on in daylight conditions.

To switch the system on, switch the lighting control to the off, autolamp or parking lamp position.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to manually override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

The system automatically turns on high beams if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns off high beam before it can distract other road users. Low beam remains on.

Note: *The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction or damage.*

Note: *The system may not operate properly in cold or inclement conditions. You can switch on the high beams by manually overriding the system.*

Note: *If the system detects a blockage, for example bird droppings, bug splatter, snow or ice, the system goes into low beam mode until you clear the blockage. A message may appear in the information display if the camera is blocked.*

Note: *Using much larger tires or equipping vehicle accessories such as snowplows can modify your vehicle's ride height and degrade automatic high beam control performance.*

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.

Once the system is active, the high beams turn on if:

- The ambient light level is low enough.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 51 km/h.

The high beams turn off if:

- The ambient light level is high enough that high beams are not required.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 43 km/h.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The camera is blocked.

Switching the System On and Off

Switch the system on using the information display.



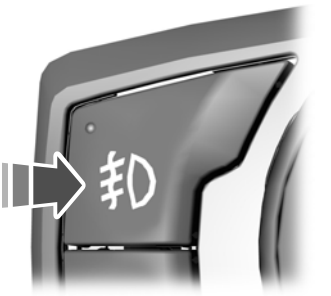
E142451

Switch the lighting control to the autolamps position.

Manually Overriding the System

When you switch on the high beams, pushing or pulling the stalk provides a temporary override to low beam.

FRONT FOG LAMPS



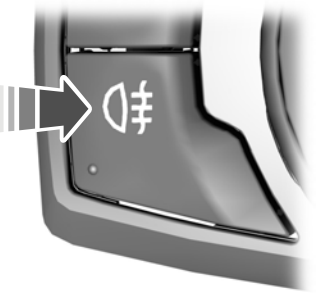
E232249

Press to switch the fog lamps on or off.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except automatic high beam or off.

REAR FOG LAMPS



E232250

WARNING

Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing and visibility is more than 50 m.

Press to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when either the front fog lamps or low beam headlamps are on.

HEADLAMP LEVELING

Headlamp leveling is provided to avoid glare for other road users when the vehicle is loaded in a number of different conditions.

To adjust the level of the headlamp beams:



E132711

1. Press to release the control.
2. Rotate the control to the required setting.
3. Press to close the control.

Set the headlamp leveling to the corresponding setting, depending on the vehicles loading condition.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

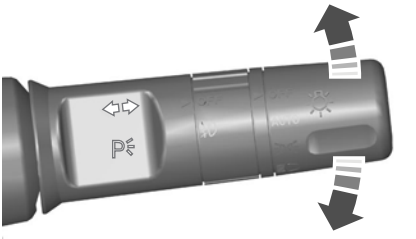
Vehicle Loading Condition	Setting
	0
	0
	1
	1
	2
	3

Set the headlamp leveling to the corresponding switch setting, depending on the vehicles loading condition.

Set the headlamp leveling control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded.

DIRECTION INDICATORS

Type 1



E212053

Type 2



E166224

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

Note: *Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times.*

INTERIOR LAMPS

The lamps turn on under the following conditions:

- You open any door.
- You press a remote control button.
- You press button A on the front interior lamp.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

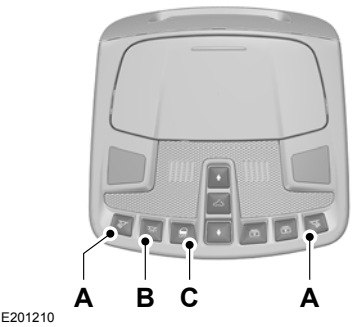
Front Interior Lamps

Note: *The front interior lamp switches are on the overhead console. The exact location of each button on the overhead console depends upon your vehicle features.*

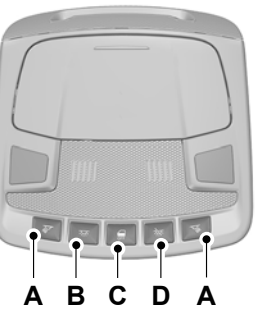
Note: *Press the required button to switch the door function off when you open any door. When the door function is off and you open a door, the courtesy and door lamps stay off. The indicator lamp lights amber when the door function is off.*

Note: *Press the button again to switch the door function back on. When the door function is on and you open a door, the courtesy and door lamps turn on. The indicator lamp lights blue when the door function is on.*

With Moonroof



Without Moonroof



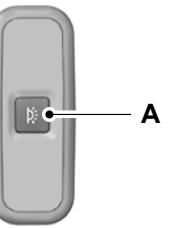
A	Individual map lamps.
B	All lamps on.
C	Door function.
D	All lamps off.

Note: *You can switch individual map lamps on independently by pressing a map lens.*

Rear Interior Lamps

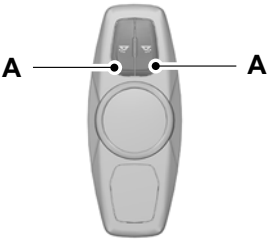
2nd Row Seats

With Moonroof



Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

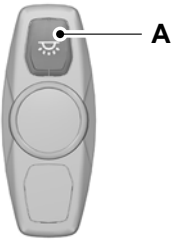
Without Moonroof



E201084

A Individual map lamps.
B Individual map lamps.

3rd Row Seats



E204767

A Dome lamps.

Glove Box Lamp

The glove box lamp turns on when you open it.

Cargo Compartment Lamp

The cargo compartment lamp turns on when you open the rear liftgate.

AMBIENT LIGHTING

Adjust the ambient lighting using the touchscreen. See your SYNC information.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

POWER WINDOWS

WARNINGS

Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.

When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

If the vehicle is to be left unsupervised, the vehicle key should be taken to ensure that the windows are not operated inadvertently.

Do not operate the electric windows unless they are free from obstruction.

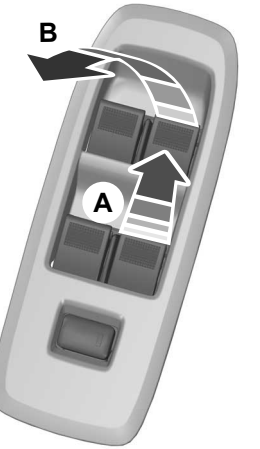
Note: *If you operate the switches often during a short period of time, the system might become inoperable for a certain time to prevent damage due to overheating.*

Note: *If you operate both the switch on the relevant door and the switch for that window on the driver's door at the same time, the window will stop moving.*

Note: *You may hear a rumbling noise when just one of the windows are open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.*

Driver's Door Switches

You can operate all the windows with the switches on the door trim panel of the driver's door.



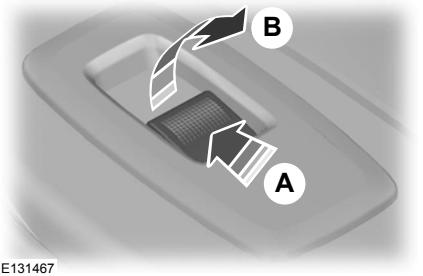
E131466

A Press the switch to open the window.

B Lift the switch to close the window.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Front and Rear Passengers' Door Switches



A Press the switch to open the window.

B Lift the switch to close the window.

Opening and Closing the Driver Side Window Automatically

Press or lift the switch to the second action point and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

Opening and Closing Other Windows Automatically

Press or lift the switch to the second action point and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

Safety Switch for the Rear Windows

Note: *You can always operate the rear and front passenger windows from the driver's door if global opening and closing is fitted.*

Note: *On vehicles without global opening and closing, the rear windows cannot be operated from driver side when the safety switch is pressed.*



A switch in the driver's door disables the rear passenger electric window switches.

The indicator in the safety switch turns on once the switch is pressed.

Resetting the Memory of the Electric Windows - Vehicle with One Touch Up/Down on Driver Side only

WARNING

The anti-trap function is deactivated until you have reset the memory.

In the event of a flat battery or after the battery has been disconnected from the vehicle, you must reset the memory for driver window.

1. Open the window.
2. Lift and hold the switch to second action point until the window is fully closed.
3. Hold the switch lifted for more than two seconds and release.
4. Open the window using the first action point and try to close it automatically using second action point.
5. If the window does not open or close automatically when the switch is pressed or lifted to second action points, repeat the procedure.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Anti-trap windows

Anti-trap windows are designed to prevent objects from getting caught between the glass and the seal when the electric window is closed. Upon sensing an obstruction, the window automatically re-opens and allows the trapped object to be removed.

Safety Mode

WARNINGS

The anti-trap function is not active during this procedure.

While you close the window (auto-up) for the third time with the obstacle in the way, the anti-trap function is disabled. Make sure there are no obstacles in the way of the closing window.

If the system detects a malfunction, it enters a safety mode. The windows will move for only about 0.8 seconds at a time and then stop again. Close the windows by lifting the switch again when the windows stop moving. Have this checked immediately.

Bounce-Back

The window will stop automatically while closing. It will reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING

When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury.

Proceed as follows to override this protection feature when there is a resistance, for example in winter:

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Close the window a third time to the point of resistance.

Note: *This operation should occur within two seconds after the window reaches the reversing end position.*

3. The bounce-back feature is now disabled and you can close the window manually. The window will go past the point of resistance and you can close it fully.

See an authorized dealer as soon as possible if the window does not close after the third attempt.

Resetting the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING

The bounce-back feature remains turned off until you reset the memory.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

1. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the switch.
3. Lift the switch again for one more second.
4. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open.
5. Release the switch.
6. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
7. Open the window and then try to close it automatically.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

8. Reset and repeat the procedure if the window does not close automatically.

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can use the remote control to operate the windows with the ignition off.

Note: *You can enable or disable this feature in the information display or see an authorized dealer. See* ***General Information*** *(page 66).*

Note: *To operate this feature, accessory delay must not be active.*

Opening the Windows

You can only open the windows for a short time after you unlock your vehicle with the remote control. After you unlock your vehicle, press and hold the remote control unlock button to open the windows and vent the moonroof. Release the button once movement starts. Press the lock or unlock button to stop movement.

Closing the Windows

WARNING

When closing the windows and moonroof, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

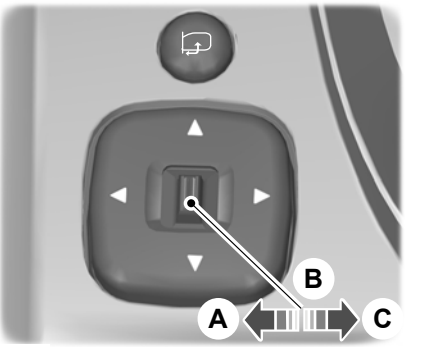
To close the windows and moonroof, press and hold the remote control lock button. Release the button once movement starts. Press the lock or unlock button to stop movement.

EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Power Exterior Mirrors

WARNING

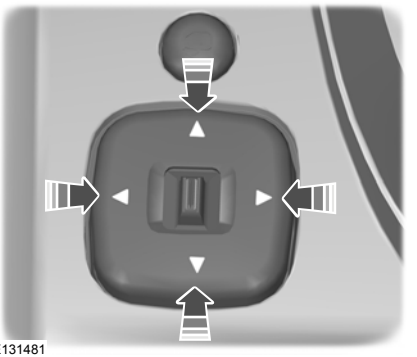
Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



E131480

A Left-hand side.
B Off.
C Right-hand side.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing


E131481

Press the arrows to adjust the mirror.

Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

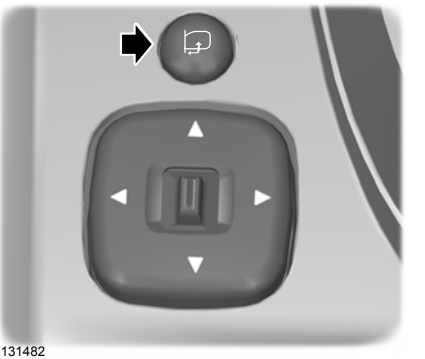
Push the mirror toward the door window glass.

Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

Power-Folding Mirrors

The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on.

Note: *The mirrors no longer operate if you switch the ignition off.*


E131482

Press the button to fold the mirrors inward.

Release the button to stop and reverse the direction of movement, or to fold the mirrors outward.

Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

The heated exterior mirrors will remove ice, mist and fog.

Signal Indicator Mirrors (If Equipped)

The outer portion of the appropriate mirror housing blinks when you switch on the direction indicator.

Puddle Lamps (If Equipped)

The lamps on the bottom part of the mirror housing light when you use your transmitter to unlock the doors or when you open a door.

Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 161).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

INTERIOR MIRROR

WARNING

Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.*

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

Auto-Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)

Note: *Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.*

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

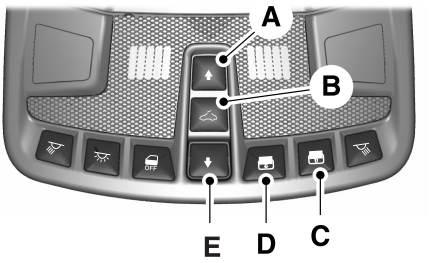
MOONROOF (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Do not let children play with the moonroof or leave them unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

When closing the moonroof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

The moonroof controls are located on the overhead console and have a one-touch open and close feature. To stop it during one-touch operation, touch the control a second time.



E191272

A **Moonroof:** Press and release to open the moonroof. The moonroof stops short of the fully opened position. Press and release the control again to open the moonroof fully.

B **Moonroof vent:** Press and release to vent the moonroof.

C **Sunshade open:** Press and release to open the sunshade. The sunshade opens automatically with the moonroof. You can also open the sunshade with the moonroof closed. The sunshade stops short of its fully opened position for the comfort of rear passengers. To open the moonroof fully, press the control again.

D **Sunshade close:** Press and release to close the sunshade.

E **Moonroof close:** Press and release to close the moonroof from either the open or vent positions.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Bounce-Back

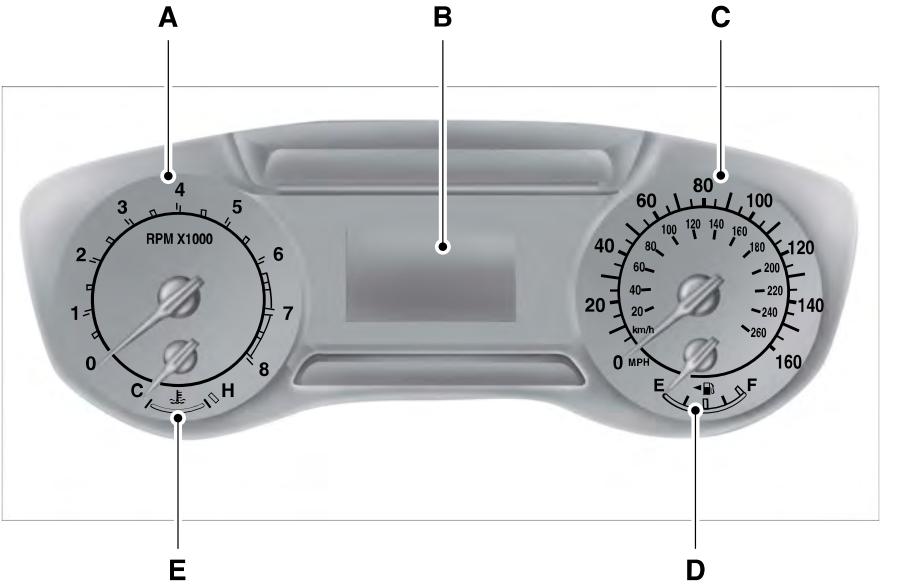
The moonroof will stop automatically and reverse some distance if an obstacle is detected while closing.

Touch and hold **C** within two seconds of a bounce-back event to override this function.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

GAUGES

Type 1

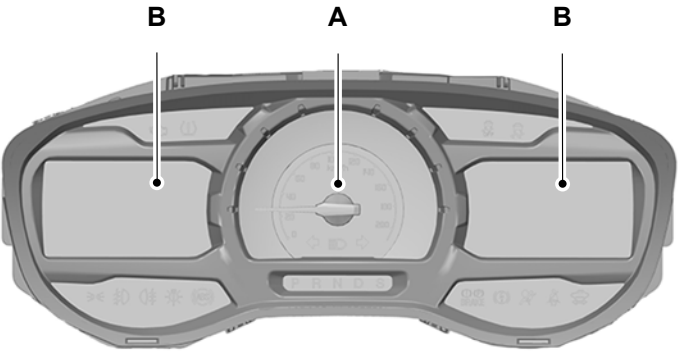


E228150

A Tachometer.
B Multi-function display.
C Speedometer.
D Fuel gauge.
E Engine coolant temperature gauge.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Type 2



E205854

A Speedometer.
B Multi-function display.

Note: *In the design and manufacture of instrumentation, Ford comply with the government regulations that the indicated value of the speedometer is not less than the actual speed. In normal operation, customers may observe by other instruments (such as a GPS Unit) that the indicated speed is slightly faster than the actual vehicle speed. This is normal and does not represent an instrument malfunction.*

Information Display

Odometer

Registers the accumulated distance your vehicle has traveled.

Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

Compass

Displays the vehicle's heading direction.

Trip Computer

See **General Information** (page 66).

Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **General Information** (page 66).

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

At normal operating temperature, the needle will remain in the center section. If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause once the engine has cooled down.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Note: *Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been determined and resolved.*

WARNING

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

Fuel Gauge

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

After refueling some variability in needle position is normal:

- It may take a short time for the needle to reach **F** after leaving the gas station. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- The fuel amount dispensed into the tank is a little less or more than the gauge indicated. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- If the gas station nozzle shuts off before the tank is full, try a different gas pump nozzle.

Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel reminder triggers when the trip computer distance-to-empty reaches 80km (when the fuel gauge needle is at approximately 1/16th fuel remaining). Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and operate the same as a warning lamp but do not illuminate when you start your vehicle.*

Note: *Depending on your vehicle specification, some warning lamps and indicators may not be active.*

Adaptive Cruise Control Lamp



The speed control system indicator light changes color to indicate what mode the system is in: See **Using Cruise Control** (page 147).

On (white light): Illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is turned on. Turns off when the speed control system is turned off.

Engaged (green light): Illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is engaged. Turns off when the speed control system is disengaged.

Anti-Lock Braking System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have the normal braking system (without anti-lock braking system) unless the brake system warning lamp is also illuminated. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Automatic High Beam Lamp



It will illuminate when this feature is on. See **Autolamps** (page 45).

Battery Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

Blind Spot Monitor Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch this feature off or in conjunction with a message. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 161). See **Information Messages** (page 73).

Brake System Warning Lamp



It will illuminate when you engage the parking brake with the ignition on.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

WARNING

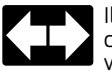
Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

Cruise Control Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch this feature on. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 147).

Direction Indicator



Illuminates when the left or right direction indicator or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burnt out bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 215).

Door Ajar Indicator



It will illuminate when the ignition is on and any door is not completely closed.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp



It will illuminate when the engine or motor coolant temperature is high. Stop your vehicle as soon as possible and contact your authorized dealer.

Engine Oil Warning Lamp

WARNING

If it illuminates when you are driving do not continue your journey, even if the oil level is correct. Have your vehicle checked.



If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Electronic Locking Differential



Illuminates when using the electronic locking differential.

Fasten Seat Belt Warning Lamp



It will illuminate and a chime will sound to remind you to fasten your seat belt. See **Seatbelt Reminder** (page 19).

Four-Wheel Drive Indicators



Illuminates when four-wheel drive low is engaged.

Front Airbag Warning Lamp



If the warning lamp does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the system may be disabled.

Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Front Fog Lamps Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Frost Warning Lamp

WARNING

Even if the temperature rises to above 4°C there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



It will illuminate when the outside air temperature is 4°C or below.

Glow Plug Indicator



With the key in the on position, illuminates when the glow plug heat is necessary as a starting aid. Wait until the light goes off before starting.

After you start the engine, the light should turn off. When the engine is cold, the light should always illuminate for a short period.

High Beam Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

Hill Descent Control



Illuminates when hill descent control is switched on.

Hood Ajar Warning Lamp



It will illuminate when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

Lane Keeping Aid Indicator



It will illuminate when you activate the lane keeping system.

Liftgate Ajar Warning Lamp



It will illuminate when the liftgate is not completely closed.

AdBlue® Lamp



It will illuminate and a message will appear in the information display when the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) level is low and needs to be refilled, or a fault is active in the system.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

Low Tire Pressure Warning



Will illuminate when your tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tire pressure as soon as possible.

It will also illuminate momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Low Washer Fluid



It illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

Over Speed Warning



It will illuminate if the vehicle exceeds 120km/h.

Parking Lamps Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the parking lamps on.

Powertrain Fault



It will illuminate when a powertrain or a four-wheel drive fault has been detected. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Rear Fog Lamps Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Fasten Rear Seat Belt Warning Lamp



It will illuminate and a chime will sound to signal the rear seat belts are not buckled.

Service Engine Soon



The service engine soon indicator light illuminates when the ignition is first turned on prior to engine start to check the bulb.If the service engine soon indicator light stays illuminated after the engine is started, it indicates that the On Board Diagnostics system (OBD) has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emissions control system.

WARNING

Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire. Have an authorized dealer service your vehicle immediately.

If the light is blinking, an engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Shift Indicator



It will illuminate to inform you that shifting to a higher gear as indicated may give better fuel economy and lower CO2 emissions. It will not illuminate during periods of high acceleration, braking or when the clutch pedal is pressed.

Speed Limiter



It will illuminate when you switch on the speed limiter system. See **Speed Limiter** (page 155).

Stability Control Warning Lamp



It will flash when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction the system will switch off. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. See **Using Stability Control** (page 136).

Stability Control Off Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the system off. It will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 136).

Water-In-Fuel Warning Lamp



It will illuminate when there is excess water in the fuel filter. Drain off the water immediately. See **Fuel Quality** (page 117).

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all of the audible warnings and indicators will display or be available.*

Key in Ignition

Sounds when the driver's door is open and the key is in the ignition.

Headlamps On

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

Parking Brake On

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving.

If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

Door Ajar

Sounds when the driver's door is ajar, or when any door is ajar while the vehicle is travelling over 5 km/h.

Seatbelt Reminder

Sounds when a seatbelt is unfastened in an occupied seat and your vehicle is moving.

Lane Departure Warning

Sounds when the system detects unintentional drifting toward the outside of the lane and alerts or aids you to stay in the lane through the steering system and instrument cluster display.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Front and Rear Park Aid

Sounds to alert driver of objects approaching the front and rear of the vehicle while moving forward or reversing.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the information display controls on the steering wheel.

The information display shows the corresponding information.

Information Display

Type 1



E201432

Menu

You can access the menu using the information display control.



This icon gives you the ability to switch a feature on or off. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

Note: *It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

Trip 1 and 2
Digital Speedometer
Distance to E
Trip odometer
Trip Timer
Fuel Used
Average Fuel

Note: *Press and hold **OK** on the current screen to reset the respective trip, distance, time and fuel information.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Fuel Economy
Distance to E
Instantaneous Fuel
Average Fuel
Average Speed
Auto StartStop

Note: *You can reset your average fuel economy by pressing and holding the* ***OK*** *button on the left hand steering wheel controls.*

Driver Assist	
AdBlue® Stat.	
Hill Start Assist	
Rear Park Aid	
Tire Monitor	Hold OK to Reset
Trailer Sway	

Settings			
Vehicle	Alarm	Choose your applicable setting.	
		Ask on Exit	
	Chimes	Park Slot	
		Information	
	Lighting	Autolamp delay	Choose your applicable setting.
	Locks	Autolock	
		Autounlock	
		Mislock	
		Remote Unlock	Choose your applicable setting.
		Switches inhibit	

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Settings		
	Oil Life Reset	***Hold OK to Reset Oil Life***
	Power Liftgate	Choose your applicable setting.
	Seatbelts	
	Windows	Remote Open
		Remote Close
	Wipers	Courtesy Wipe
		Rain Sensing
		Reverse Wiper
Display	Distance	Choose your applicable setting.
	Temperature	Choose your applicable setting.
	Language	Choose your applicable setting.

Information Display

Type 2



E201433

Menu

You can access the menu using the information display control.

Note: *It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

Display Mode
Distance to Empty
Tachometer
Tachometer + Temperature Gauge

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Display Mode
Off Road
Digital Speedometer

Note: *You can reset your trip information by pressing and holding the* ***OK*** *button on the left hand steering wheel controls.*

Trip 1 & 2
All values

All Values — shows all trip values (Trip Timer, Odometer and Average Fuel).

Note: *You can reset your trip information by pressing and holding the* ***OK*** *button on the left hand steering wheel controls.*

Fuel Economy
Instant fuel
Fuel History
Average Speed

- Instant Fuel Economy - shows a visual graph of your instantaneous fuel economy.
- Fuel History - shows a bar chart of your fuel history.
- Average Speed - shows your vehicles average speed since the function was last reset.

Note: *You can reset your average fuel economy by pressing and holding the* ***OK*** *button on the left hand steering wheel controls.*

Driver Assist	
AdBlue® Status	
Blindspot	
Chimes	Park Slot Found
	Information
Cross Traffic Alert	
Cruise Control	Choose your applicable setting.
Driver Alert	Driver Alert

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Driver Assist		
	Display	
Hill Start Assist		
Lane Keeping Sys	Mode	Choose your applicable setting.
	Intensity	Choose your applicable setting.
Pre-Collision	On	
	Alert Sensitivity	Choose your applicable setting.
	Dist. Indication	
	Active Braking	
Rear Park Aid		
Tire Monitor	Hold OK to Reset	
Trailer Sway		

Settings			
Vehicle	Alarm	Choose your applicable setting.	
		Ask on Exit	
	Lighting	Auto Highbeam	
		Autolamp Delay	Choose your applicable setting.
	Locks	Autolock	
		Autounlock	
		Mislock	
		Remote Unlock	Choose your applicable setting.
		Switch Inhibit	
	Oil Life Reset	Hold OK to Reset	
	Power Liftgate	Choose your applicable setting.	

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Settings		
	Seatbelts	
	Windows	Remote Open
		Remote Close
	Wipers	Courtesy Wipe
		Rain Sensing
		Reverse Wiper
Display Setup	Distance	Choose your applicable setting.
	Temperature	Choose your applicable setting.
	Gauge Display	Choose your applicable setting.
	Language	Choose your applicable setting.
MyKey	MyKey	"Num" MyKeys
		"Odo" MyKey km
		"Num" Admin Keys
	Create MyKey	
	Traction Control	Choose your applicable setting.
	Max Speed	Choose your applicable setting.
	Speed Minder	Choose your applicable setting.
	Volume Limiter	
	Clear MyKeys	***Hold OK to Clear MyKeys***

CLOCK

For detailed instructions on how to adjust the clock See **General Information** (page 244).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

TRIP COMPUTER

Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

Instantaneous fuel consumption

Indicates the current average fuel consumption.

Average Fuel Consumption

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

Trip Odometer

Records the distance travelled on individual journeys.

Digital Speedometer

The speed your vehicle is traveling at will display as a digital number.

Average Speed

Indicates the average speed since the function was last reset.

Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

Odometer

Records the total distance traveled by your vehicle.

Resetting the trip computer

To reset a particular display:

1. Highlight **Trip Computer** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
2. Highlight the function to be reset.
3. Hold the **OK** button pressed.

PERSONALIZED SETTINGS

Languages

A selection of languages are available using the menus in the setting menu.

Measure units

To toggle between either metric or imperial units, scroll to this display and press the **OK** button.

Toggling the units of measure using this display will affect the following displays:

- Distance to empty.
- Average fuel consumption.
- Instantaneous fuel consumption.
- Average speed.

Temperature units

To toggle between metric and imperial units, scroll to this display and press the **OK** button.

Toggling the temperature units using this display will affect the following displays:

- Outside air temperature.
- The temperature display in the automatic climate control.

Chime deactivation

The following chimes can be switched off:

- Warning messages.
- Information messages.

MyKey

MyKey is a feature which allows customers to assign keys which will enable extra safety features designed for use by young drivers. Features can be adjusted and customized to suit the level of driver. Features include:

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

- Muted audio when seatbelts are unbuckled.
- Vehicle speed limited.
- Speed minder.
- Volume limiter on audio system.
- Fuel warnings given at higher distance to empty values.
- Prevention of turning off some driver assist systems:
  - Traction control
  - Park aid
  - Blind Spot monitor and cross traffic alert
  - Collision Warning System - additionally uses maximum sensitivity as default
  - Emergency assist
  - Do not disturb
- Mileage logged by MyKeys.

INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: *Depending on the vehicle options equipped with your vehicle, not all of the messages will display or be available. Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type you have.*



E201420

Press the ***OK*** button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. Other messages will be removed automatically after a short time.

You need to confirm certain messages before you can access the menus.

4WD

Message	Action
4x4 Temporarily Disabled	Displays if the 4x4 system temporarily disables to protect itself from overheating.
4x4 OFF	Displays if the 4x4 system automatically disables to protect itself. This is caused by operating the vehicle with the compact spare tire installed or if the system is overheating.
4x4 Restored	The 4x4 system resumes normal function and clears this message after driving a short distance with the road tire re-installed or after the system cools.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Message	Action
Check 4x4	Displays in conjunction with the Throttle Control/Transmission/4x4 light if the 4x4 system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact a certified technician as soon as possible.
For 4x4 LOW Slow to 5 km/h	Displays when you attempt to switch to 4X4 LOW and your vehicle's speed is greater than 5 km/h.
To Exit 4x4 LOW Slow to 5 km/h	Displays when you attempt to switch from 4X4 LOW and your vehicle's speed is greater than 5 km/h.
For 4x4 LOW Apply Brake	Displays when 4x4 LOW cannot be engaged due to inadequate brake application. Apply brake to engage 4x4 LOW.
To Exit 4x4 LOW Apply Brake	Display when 4x4 LOW cannot be disengaged due to inadequate brake application. Apply brake to disengage 4x4 LOW.
For 4x4 LOW Apply Clutch	Displays when 4x4 LOW cannot be engaged due to inadequate clutch application. Apply clutch to engage 4x4 LOW.
To Exit 4x4 LOW Apply Clutch	Displays when 4x4 LOW cannot be engaged due to inadequate clutch application. Apply clutch to disengage 4x4 LOW.
For 4x4 LOW Shift to N	Displays when you attempt to switch to 4X4 LOW and you do not shift the transmission to neutral (N).
To Exit 4x4 LOW Shift to N	Displays when you attempt to switch from 4X4 LOW and you do not shift the transmission to neutral (N).
4x4 Shift in Progress	The 4X4 system is making a shift.

Active Park

Message	Action
Active Park Fault	Displayed when the system needs service. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Action
Adaptive Cruise Malfunction	Displayed when a radar malfunction is preventing the ACC from engaging. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 148).
Adaptive Cruise Not Available	Displayed when conditions exist such that the adaptive cruise cannot function properly. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 148).
Adaptive Cruise Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	Displayed when the radar is blocked because of poor radar visibility due to bad weather or ice/mud/water in front of radar. Driver can typically clean the sensor to resolve. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 148).
Front Sensor Not Aligned	Displayed when a radar malfunction is preventing the ACC from engaging.
Adaptive Cruise - Driver Resume Control	Displayed when the adaptive cruise has reinstated controls to the driver.
Adaptive Cruise Speed Too Low to Activate	Displays when the vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise.
Adaptive Cruise Shift Down	Displays when the adaptive cruise is automatically adjusting the gap distance and the driver needs to shift the transmission into a lower gear.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

AdBlue ® Level

Message	Action
AdBlue® Low Range: XXXX km/mi Refill Soon	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue ®) tank will be empty. Refill the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue ®) tank as soon as possible. See **Selective Catalytic Reduction System** (page 119).
AdBlue® Low No engine start in XXXX km/mi	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue ®) tank will be empty and when it will restrict the engine from starting. Refill the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue ®) tank as soon as possible. See **Selective Catalytic Reduction System** (page 119).
AdBlue® level empty. Refill to start engine	The diesel exhaust fluid tank (AdBlue ®) is empty and is restricting the engine from starting. Refill the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue ®) tank to re-start engine. See **Selective Catalytic Reduction System** (page 119).

AdBlue ® System Malfunction

Message	Action
AdBlue® sys Fault Service req'd	The system has detected a fault that requires service. See **Selective Catalytic Reduction System** (page 119).
AdBlue® sys No engine start in XXXX km	The system has detected a fault that requires service. See **Selective Catalytic Reduction System** (page 119).
AdBlue® sys Service req'd to start engine	The system has detected a fault that requires service. See **Selective Catalytic Reduction System** (page 119).

Airbag

Message	Action
Occupant Sensor BLOCKED Remove Objects Near Passenger Seat	Displays when the system detects a malfunction due to a blocked sensor.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Alarm

Message	Action
Vehicle Alarm To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle.	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.

Battery and Charging System

Message	Action
Check Charging System	Displayed when the charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Low Battery Features Temporarily Turned Off	Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal
Turn Power Off To Save Battery	Displayed when the battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.

Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System

Message	Action
Blindspot System Fault	Displayed when a fault with the system has occurred. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Blindspot Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	Displayed when the system sensors are blocked. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 161).
Vehicle Coming From Left	Displayed when the system detects a vehicle from the left side. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 161).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Message	Action
Vehicle Coming From Right	Displayed when the system detects a vehicle from the right side. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 161).
Cross Traffic Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	Displayed when the blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 161).
Cross Traffic System Fault	Displays when a fault with the system has occurred. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Doors and Locks

Message	Action
Door Ajar	Displays when the door(s) listed is not completely closed and the vehicle is moving.
	Displays when the door(s) listed is not completely closed.
Trunk Ajar	Displays when the luggage compartment is not completely closed.
Hood Ajar	Displays when the hood is not completely closed.
Switches Inhibited Security Mode	Displays when the door switches have been disabled.
Child Lock Malfunction Service Required	Displayed when there is a system malfunction with the child locks. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Factory Keypad Code {X X X X X}	Displays the factory keypad code after the keypad has been reset.

Driver Alert

Message	Action
Driver Alert Warning Rest Now	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver Alert Warning Rest Suggested	Take a rest break soon.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Fuel

Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	Displayed as an early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	Displayed when the fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.

Hill Start Assist

Message	Action
Hill Start Assist Not Available	Displays when hill start assist is not available. Contact your authorized dealer. See **Hill Start Assist** (page 132).

Hill Descent Control

Message	Action
For Hill Descent Reduce Speed 20MPH or Less	Displayed when vehicle speed is too high for HDC to engage. Reduce speed to below that indicated in the message to engage HDC.
For Hill Descent Reduce Speed 32 Km/h or Less	
Hill Descent Control Off System Cooling	Displayed when HDC cannot be engaged due to excessive heat. Allow system to cool before re-engaging.
Hill Descent Control Fault	Displayed when there is a fault with the HDC system. See your authorized dealer.
For Hill Descent Select Gear	Displayed when HDC cannot be engaged due to vehicle not being in gear. Select gear to engage HDC.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Keys and Keyless Entry

Message	Action
Starting System Fault	This message is displayed when there is a problem with your vehicle's starting system. See your authorized dealer for service.
To START Press Brake and Clutch	Displayed as a reminder to press the brake and clutch while starting the vehicle.
To START Press Clutch	Displayed as a reminder to press the clutch in while starting the vehicle.
Key Program Successful	Displayed during spare key programming, when an intelligent access key is programmed to the system.
Key Program Failure	Displayed during spare key programming, when an intelligent access key has failed to be programmed.
Max Number of Keys Learned	Displayed during spare key programming when the maximum number of keys have been programmed.
Not Enough Keys Learned	Displayed during spare key programming when not enough keys have been programmed.
Key Battery Low Replace Soon	Displays when the key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible.
Could Not Program Integrated Key	Displayed when an attempt is made to program a spare key using two existing keys.
Engine ON	Displays to inform the driver that they are exiting the vehicle and the engine is on.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Lane Keeping System

Message	Action
Lane Keeping Sys. Malfunction Service Required	The system has malfunctioned. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The system has detected a condition that requires the windshield to be cleaned to operate properly.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The system has malfunctioned. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	Displayed when the system requests the driver to keep their hand s on the steering wheel.

Maintenance

Message	Action
Low Engine Oil Pressure	Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, turn off the engine. Check the oil level. If the warning stays on or continues to come on with your engine running, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Change Engine Oil Soon	Displayed when the engine oil life remaining is 10% or less. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).
Oil Change Required	Displayed when the oil life left reaches 0%. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).
Brake Fluid Level Low	Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 211).
Check Brake System	Displays when the brake system needs servicing. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Contact your authorized dealer.
Engine Coolant Over Temperature	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop the vehicle in a safe place and allow the engine to cool. If the problem persists, contact your authorized dealer. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 209).
Power Reduced to Lower Engine Temp	Displays when the engine has reduced power in order to help reduce high coolant temperatures.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Message	Action
Transport Mode Contact Dealer	Displays to indicate that the vehicle is still in Transport mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. See your authorized dealer.
Factory Mode Contact Dealer	Displays to indicate that the vehicle is still in Factory mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. See your authorized dealer.
See Manual	Informs the driver that the powertrain needs service due to a powertrain malfunction.

Park Aid

Message	Action
Check Front Park Aid	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer. See **Front Parking Aid** (page 140).
Check Rear Park Aid	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 139).
Rear Park Aid On Off	Displays the park aid status.

Park Brake

Message	Action
Park Brake Engaged	Displays when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 5 km/h. If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact your authorized dealer.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Power Steering

Message	Action
Steering Lock Fault Service Now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. See your authorized dealer.
Steering Loss Stop Safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Contact your authorized dealer.
Steering Assist Fault Service Required	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system or passive entry or passive start system requires service. Contact your authorized dealer.

Powertrain

Message	Action
Check Locking Differential	Displayed when there is a malfunction with the electronic locking differential that requires service. See your authorized dealer.
Fuel Pressure Low	Displayed when there is a loss in fuel system pressure. See your authorized dealer.
Stop Safely Now	Displayed when there is a powertrain fault and vehicle has entered limp home mode. See your authorized dealer.

Starting System

Message	Action
To START Press Brake	Displays when starting the vehicle as a reminder to apply the brake.
Engine Start Pending Please Wait	Displays when the starter is attempting to start the vehicle.
Pending Start Cancelled	Displays when the pending start has been cancelled.
Cranking Time Exceeded	Displays when the starter has exceeded its cranking time in attempting to start the vehicle.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Terrain Management System

Message	Action
Terrain Management System Fault	Displayed when there is a fault with the Terrain Management system. See your authorized dealer.
Mode Change Not Accepted, Retry	Displayed when the Terrain Management system was unable to complete a mode change. Retry to enter terrain modes.
To Enter Rock Mode 4x4 LOW is Required	Displayed when Terrain Management system is unable to enter crawl mode as the vehicle is not in 4X4 Low. Engage 4X4 Low to enter crawl mode.
To Exit 4x4 LOW Exit Rock Mode	Displayed when 4X4 Low cannot be disengaged as the Terrain Management is in crawl mode. Exit crawl mode to disengage 4X4 Low.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
Tire Pressure Low	Displays when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 229).
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	Displays when the tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 229).
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 229). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Transmission

Message	Action
Transmission Malfunction Service Now	See your authorized dealer.
Transmission Overheating Stop Safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as it is possible.
Transmission Service Required	See your authorized dealer.
Transmission Limited Function See Manual	Displays when the transmission has overheated and has limited functionality. See **Automatic Transmission** (page 125).
Transmission Not in Park	Displays as a reminder to shift into park.
Press Brake Pedal	Displays as a reminder to press the brake pedal in order to select a gear.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Outside Air

Keep the air intakes in front of the windshield free from obstruction (such as snow or leaves) to allow the climate control system to function effectively.

Recirculated Air

WARNING

Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to mist up. If the windows mist up, follow the settings for demisting the windshield.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. Outside air does not enter your vehicle.

Heating

Heating performance depends on the temperature of the engine coolant.

General Information on Controlling the Interior Climate

Fully close all the windows.

Warming the Interior

Direct the air toward your feet. In cold or humid weather conditions, direct some of the air toward the windshield and the door windows.

Cooling the Interior

Direct the air toward your face.

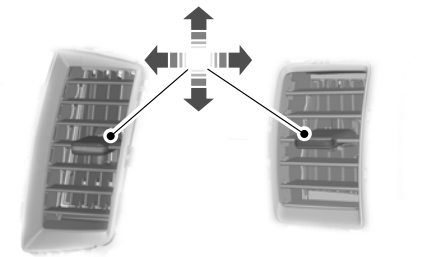
Air Conditioning

The system directs air through the evaporator for cooling. The evaporator extracts humidity from the air to help keep the windows free of mist. The system directs the resulting condensation to the outside of your vehicle, which may cause a small pool to form under your vehicle. This is normal.

Note: *The air conditioning operates only when the temperature is above 4°C.*

Note: *When you use air conditioning, your vehicle uses more fuel.*

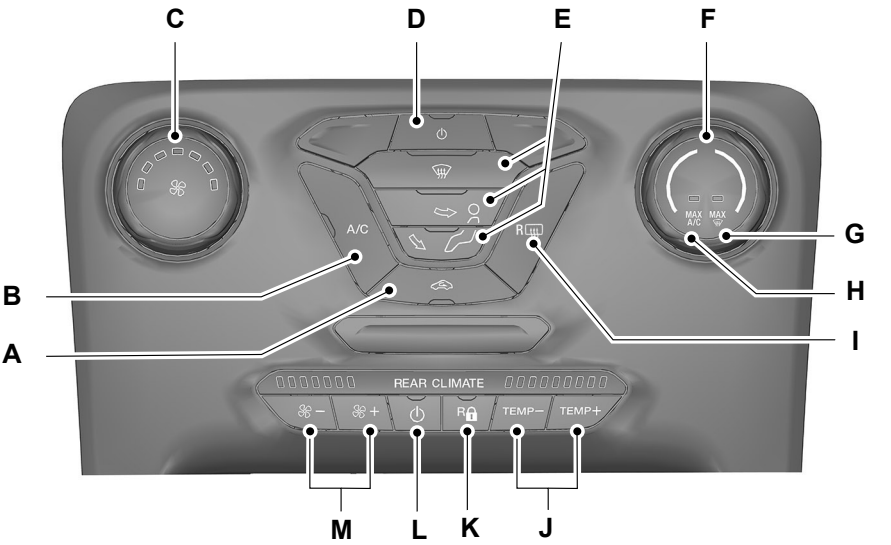
AIR VENTS



E201078

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL



E200604

A **Recirculated air:** Press to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior (when used with A/C) and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: Recirculated air may turn on and off automatically (or prevent you from switching on) in all modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging or to improve cooling efficiency.

B **A/C:** Press to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve performance and efficiency.

Note: In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.

C **Fan speed control:** Adjusts the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

D **Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

E **Air distribution control:** Press to switch airflow from the instrument panel or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through any combination of these vents.

Note: At least one of these buttons illuminates on when the system is on.

F **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle.

G **MAX Defrost:** Adjust to switch on defrost. The driver and passenger settings set to HI, and outside air flows through the windshield vents. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

H **MAX A/C:** Adjust for maximum cooling. The driver and passenger settings set to LO, recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

I **Heated rear window:** Press to switch the heated rear window on and off.

J **Rear passenger temperature control:** Adjust the temperature setting for the rear passenger compartment.

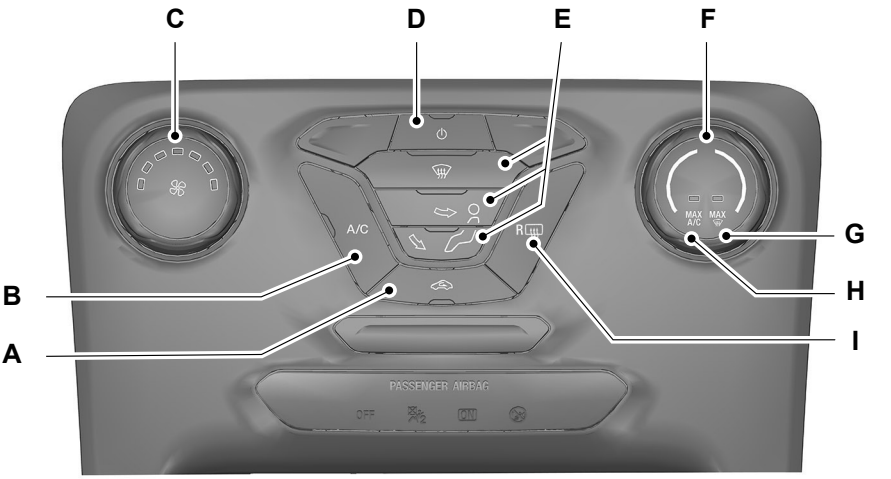
K **Rear fan speed control lock:** When illuminated, you can only operate the rear passenger settings through the front controls.

L **Rear passenger power:** Press to switch the rear system on and off.

M **Rear fan speed control:** Adjusts the volume of air circulated to the rear passenger compartment.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL



E205820

A **Recirculated air:** Press to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior (when used with A/C) and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off automatically (or prevent you from switching on) in all modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in Panel or Panel/Floor airflow modes during hot weather in order to improve cooling efficiency.

B **A/C:** Press to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

Note: In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.

C **Fan speed control:** Adjusts the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

D **Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

E **Air distribution control:** Press to switch airflow from the instrument panel or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through any combination of these vents.

Note: At least one of these buttons illuminates on when the system is on.

F **Temperature control:** Adjusts the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle.

G **MAX Defrost:** Turn to switch on defrost. Air flows through the windshield vents. You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

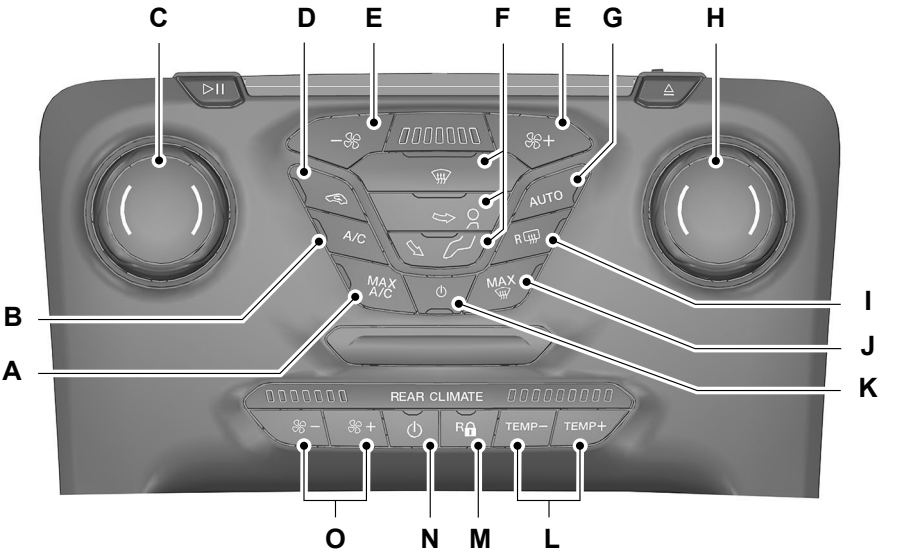
H **MAX A/C:** Turn for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents and air conditioning automatically turns on.

I **Heated rear window:** Press to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page ?).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL

Type 1



E200619

A **MAX A/C:** Press for maximum cooling. The driver and passenger settings set to LO, recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

B **A/C:** Press to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve performance and efficiency.

Note: In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.

C **Passenger temperature control:** Adjusts the temperature setting on the passenger side.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

D **Recirculated air:** Press to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior (when used with A/C) and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: Recirculated air may turn on and off automatically (or prevent you from switching on) in all modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging or to improve cooling efficiency.

E **Fan speed control:** Adjusts the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

F **Air distribution control:** Press to switch airflow from the instrument panel or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through any combination of these vents.

Note: At least one of these buttons illuminates on when the system is on.

G **AUTO:** Press to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air automatically adjust to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also switch off dual zone mode by pressing and holding for more than two seconds.

H **Driver temperature control:** Adjusts the temperature setting on the driver side. This control also adjusts the passenger side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.

I **Heated rear window:** Press to switch the heated rear window on and off.

J **MAX Defrost:** Press to switch on defrost. The driver and passenger settings set to HI, outside air flows through the windshield vents, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

K **Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.

L **Rear passenger temperature control:** Adjusts the temperature setting for the rear passenger compartment.

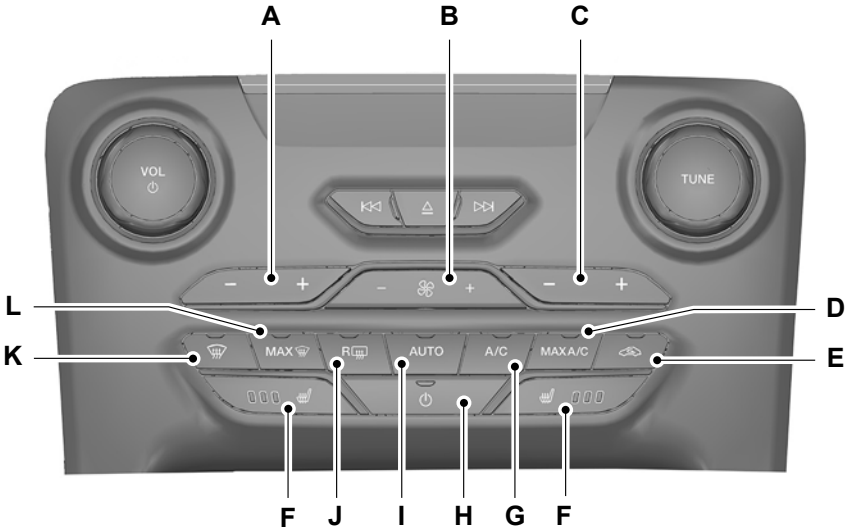
M **Rear fan speed control lock:** When illuminated, you can only operate the rear passenger settings through the front controls.

N **Rear passenger power:** Press to switch the rear system on and off.

O **Rear fan speed control:** Adjusts the volume of air circulated to the rear passenger compartment.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Type 2



E200620

A **Passenger temperature control:** Adjusts the temperature setting on the passenger side.

B **Fan speed control:** Adjusts the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

C **Driver temperature control:** Adjusts the temperature setting on the driver side. This control also adjusts the passenger side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.

D **MAX A/C:** Press for maximum cooling. The driver and passenger settings set to LO, recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

E **Recirculated air:** Press to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior (when used with A/C) and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: Recirculated air may turn on and off automatically (or prevent you from switching on) in all modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging or to improve cooling efficiency.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

F **Heated seats:** Press to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Heated Seats** (page 109).

G **A/C:** Press to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve performance and efficiency.

Note: In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.

H **Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.

I **AUTO:** Press to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air automatically adjust to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also switch off dual zone mode by pressing and holding for more than two seconds.

J **Heated rear window:** Press to switch the heated rear window on and off.

K **Defrost:** Press to distribute air through the windshield air vents and de-mister. Air distribution to the instrument panel and footwell vents turns off. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

L **MAX Defrost:** Press to switch on defrost. The driver and passenger settings set to HI, outside air flows through the windshield vents, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

General Hints

WARNING

Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up. If the windows fog up, follow the settings for demisting the windshield.

Note: *You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.*

Note: *To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.*

Note: *Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.*

Note: *Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Note: *To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.*

Manual Climate Control

Note: *To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather, adjust the air distribution control to the windshield air vents position.*

Automatic Climate Control

Note: *Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. The system automatically adjusts to heat or cool the interior to your selected temperature as quickly as possible. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.*

Note: *If you select **AUTO** during cold temperatures, the system directs airflow to the windshield and side window vents. In addition, the fan may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.*

Note: *If you select **AUTO** during hot temperatures, or the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system automatically uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. When the interior reaches the selected temperature, the system automatically switches to using outside air.*

Quickly Heating the Interior

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.	Press ***AUTO***.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the full heat setting.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Direct air to the footwell using the air distribution buttons.	

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Recommended Settings for Heating

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the center setting.	Press ***AUTO***.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Direct air to the footwell using the air distribution buttons.	

Quickly Cooling the Interior

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Press ***MAX A/C***.	Press ***MAX A/C***.
2	Drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.	

Recommended Settings for Cooling

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the center setting.	Press ***AUTO***.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Direct air to the instrument panel using the air distribution buttons.	

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

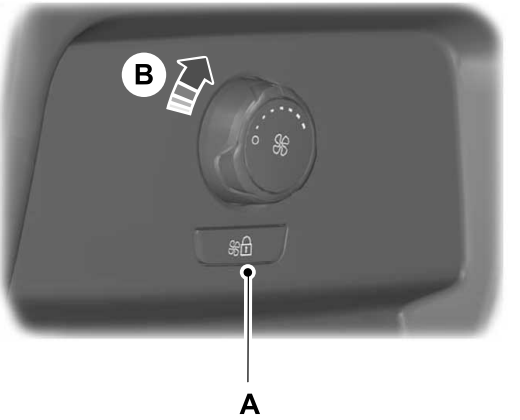
Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Direct air to the windshield using the air distribution buttons.	Press the defrost button.
2	Press ***A/C***.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.	
4	Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.	

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

REAR PASSENGER CLIMATE CONTROLS

Type 1



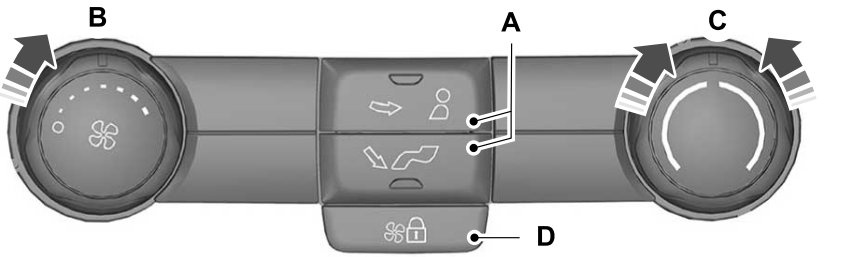
E250140

A **Rear fan speed control lock:** When illuminated, you can only operate the rear passenger settings through the front controls.

B **Rear fan speed control:** Adjusts the volume of air circulated to the rear passenger compartment.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Type 2



E200665

A **Rear air distribution control:** Press to switch direction of airflow.

B **Rear fan speed control:** Adjusts the volume of air circulated to the rear passenger compartment.

C **Rear passenger temperature control:** Adjusts the temperature setting for the rear passenger compartment.

D **Rear fan speed control lock:** When illuminated, you can only operate the rear passenger settings through the front controls.

HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

Heated Rear Window

Note: *Make sure the engine is running before operating the heated windows.*

Press the button to clear the heated rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window automatically turns off after a short period of time.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.*

Heated Exterior Mirrors

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors automatically turn on.

Note: *Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.*

Note: *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.*

HEATED WINDSHIELD

Press the button to clear the heated windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield automatically turns off after a short period of time. Start the engine before you switch the heated windshield on.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Note: *The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.*

CABIN AIR FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a cabin air filter, which gives you and your passengers the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle and odor concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

You can locate the cabin air filter behind the glove box.

Note: *Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.*

Replace the filter at regular intervals.

For additional cabin air filter information, or to replace the filter, see a qualified technician.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

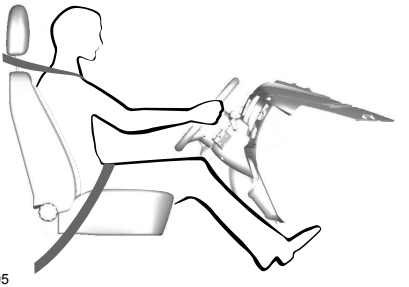
SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

WARNINGS

Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.

Do not recline the seatback as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a crash.

Do not place objects higher than the seatback to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a crash or during heavy braking.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seatback more than 30 degrees.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

HEAD RESTRAINTS

WARNINGS

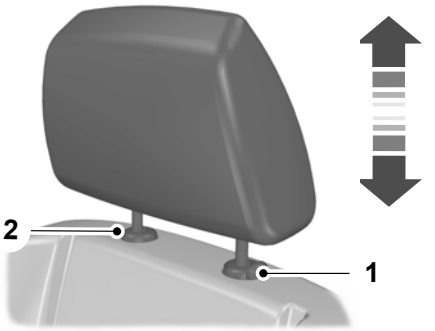
Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

Raise the rear head restraints when passengers occupy the rear seats.

When front seats are in use the head restraints must not be removed.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Front head restraints



E140447

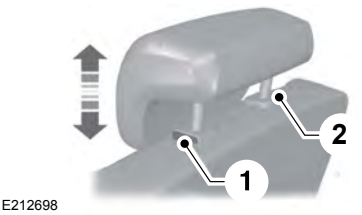
To raise, pull the head restraint up to the desired position. To lower, press locking button 1 and lower the head restraint to the desired position. Make sure that the head restraint engages properly when in position.

The head restraint should be located so that the top of the head restraint is level with the top of your head for optimum support in the event of an impact.

To remove the head restraint

Press locking button 1 and at the same time release the retaining clip 2 using a suitable implement.

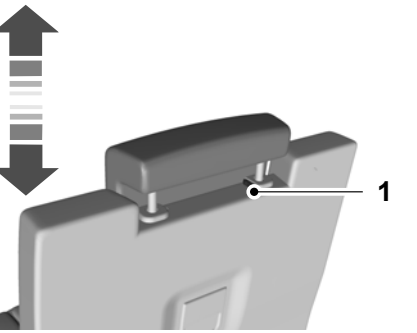
Rear head restraints (Second row seats)



E212698

To raise, pull the head restraint up to the fullest extent. Press the locking button 1 to lower the head restraint. Press the locking button 2 to remove the head restraint.

Rear head restraints (Third row seats)



E213753

To raise, pull the head restraint up to the fullest extent where it will lock into position. To lower, press the locking button 1 and push the head restraint downward. To remove, raise the head restraint to the locked position, press the locking button 1 and pull the head restraint upward, removing it from the seat back.

MANUAL SEATS

WARNING

Do not adjust the driver seat when your vehicle is moving.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

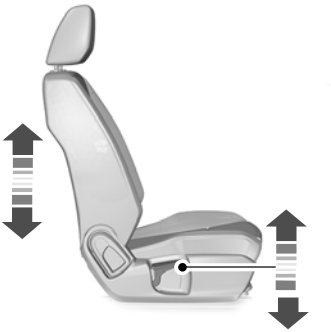


E201041

WARNING

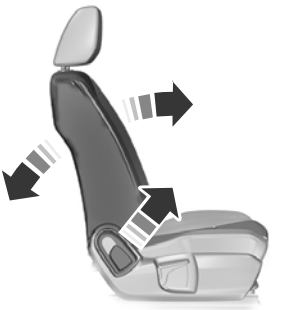
Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward.

Adjusting the Height of the Driver Seat



E201043

Recline Adjustment



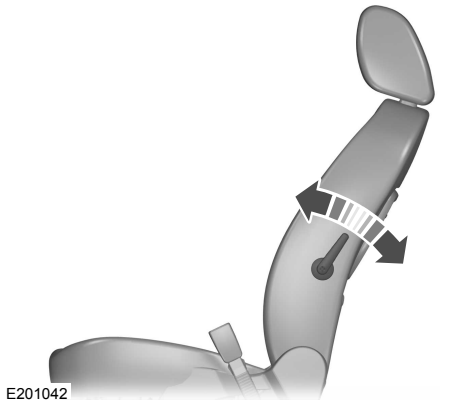
E201044

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

WARNING

Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seat backrest before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seat backrest to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seat backrest to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.

Adjusting the Lumbar Support of the Driver Seat



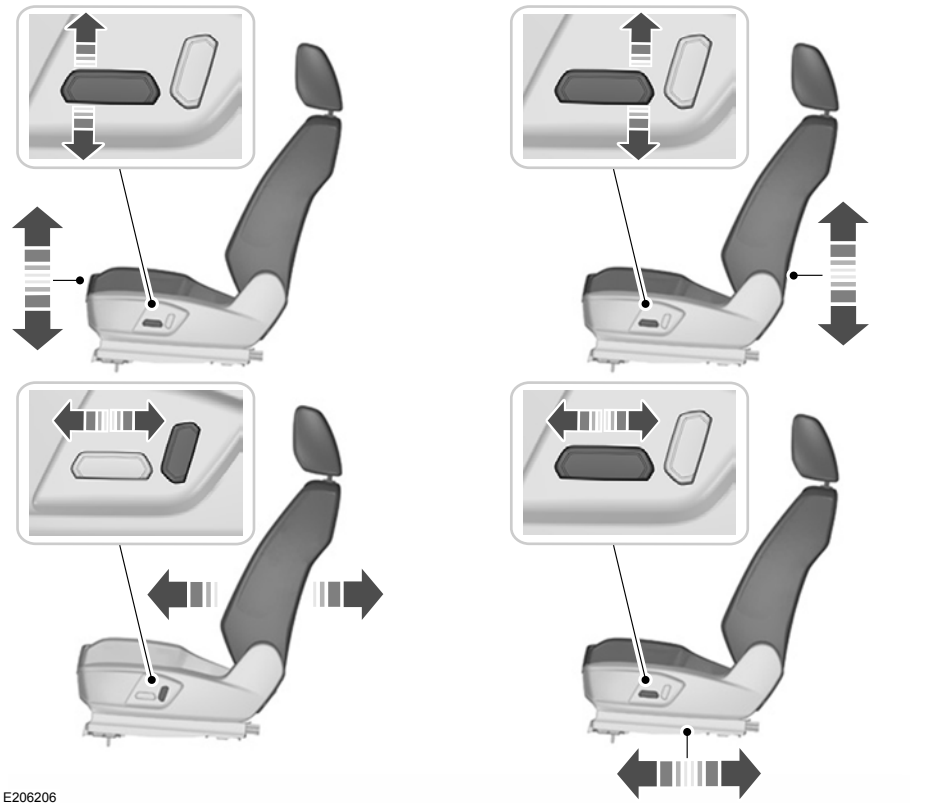
POWER SEATS (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Do not adjust the driver's seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving. Adjusting your seatback while your vehicle is in motion may cause loss of control of your vehicle.

Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing



E206206

REAR SEATS

Adjusting the Rear Seats

Second Row Seats

WARNINGS

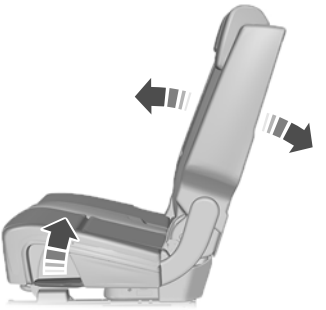
Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

WARNINGS

Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Reclining adjustment



E201038

Folding the Seatback

WARNING

When folding the seatbacks down, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seatback and seat frame.

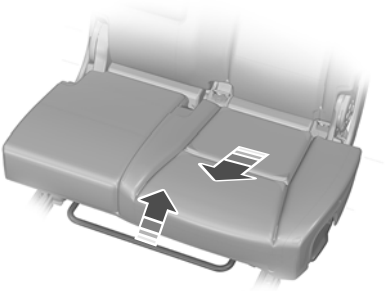


E206205

With the seat empty, pull the lever up to fold the seatback forward.

Note: *Lower the head restraints. See* ***Head Restraints*** *(page 101).*

Moving the Seats Backward and Forward (If equipped)



E201070

Accessing Third Row Seats

WARNING

Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to make sure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

Note: *Remove items from the second-row seat. Make sure that no bulky objects such as purses or briefcases are on the floor in front of the second-row seats before folding the seats to easy entry position.*

Note: *For second-row bench seats, make sure the center seatbelt is unbuckled before folding the seatback.*

Note: *You may have to move the front-row seat forward to allow the second-row seat to be fully folded.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Note: *You may have to lower the center head restraint. See* ***Head Restraints*** *(page 101).*

Fold the second-row seat to access the third row:

1. Fold the outboard head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 101).



E206205

2. Pull the handle located on the top of the seat to move the seats to easy entry position to access 3rd row.
3. Move the left side seat forward untill it releases from the catch.
4.
5. Lift the seatback toward the rear of the vehicle, and rotate the seatback until you hear a click, locking it in the upright position.

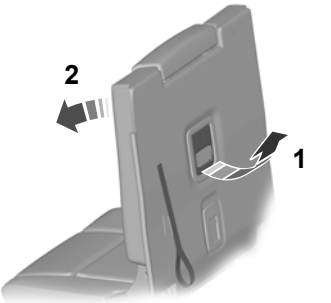


E190846

6. Pull the head restraint back up to its normal adjusted position.

Folding and unfolding the Third Row Manual Seat

1. Remove all objects from the seat.
2. Lower all third row head restraints. See **Head Restraints** (page 101).



E201039

3. From the rear of the vehicle, fold the seatback by pulling and holding the handle while pushing the seatback forward. Release the handle once the seatback starts rotating forward.
4. To return the seatback to the upright position, pull the long strap located on the seatback.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

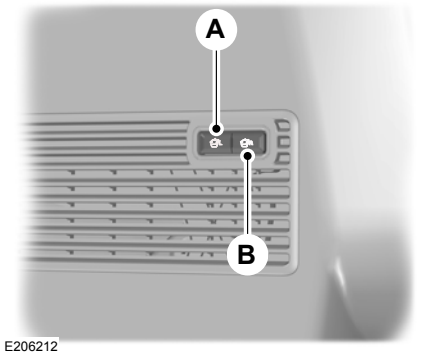
Note: *Do not use the seat anchors as cargo tie downs.*


E190924

Note: *Make sure that the area under the seat is free of objects before stowing it.*

PowerFold™ Third Row Seats (If equipped)

The third row power seat buttons are located behind the third row seats on the left-hand quarter trim panel.



E206212

A Press to fold and unfold left hand side seat.

B Press to fold and unfold right hand side seat.

Note: *The third row seat includes obstacle detection that allows the seat to stop and reverse direction if it hits an obstacle so that the obstacle can be removed.*

Note: *Pressing a different button while the power seat feature is already being performed may cause the first selected seat movement to be cancelled. Allow the first seat movement to be completed before pressing a button for another function.*

Note: *Make sure that there are no objects such as books, purses or briefcases on the load floor before unstowing the seat. Failure to remove all objects from the top of the load floor prior to unstowing it may cause damage to the seat.*

Note: *In order to allow the seat to complete the stowed position, do not place objects under the seat before stowing. Remove all objects from the seat and stowage tub.*

Note: *In the unlikely event that the third row power seat stops prematurely or travels to an unexpected position, press the FOLD button to reset the seat and return it to a normal position.*

These seats feature a power one-touch operation that allows you fold and stow the seats.

- The power fold seats work only when the transmission is in park (P) and the liftgate is open.
- If the ignition is off and the feature is still running, the battery saver will turn it off after 10 minutes. Press unlock on the remote entry key transmitter to reactivate the power seats or unlock it with the keyless entry keypad. See **Remote Control** (page 23).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

HEATED SEATS (If Equipped)

Front Seats

WARNING

People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This may damage the heating element which may cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.



E146322

Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

12 Volt DC Power Point

WARNING

Do not use a power point for operating a cigar lighter. Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.*

If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.

Note: *Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug.*

Note: *Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.*

Note: *Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.*

Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This damages the power point and blows the fuse.

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

Location

Power points may be in the following locations:

- On the instrument panel.
- On the rear of the center console.
- Inside the luggage compartment.

230 Volt AC Power Point (If Equipped)

WARNING

Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 230 volt AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *The power point turns off when you switch the ignition off.*

You can use the power point for electric devices that require up to 150 watts. It is on the rear of the center console.



E206133

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

When the indicator light on the power point is:

- On: The power point is working, the ignition is on and a device is plugged in.
- Off: The power point is off, the ignition is off or no device is plugged in.
- Flashing: The power point is in fault mode.

The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the 150 watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Switch the ignition back on, but do not plug your device back in. Let the system cool off and switch the ignition off to reset the fault mode. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on.

Do not use the power point for certain electric devices, including:

- Cathode-ray, tube-type televisions.
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools or compressor-driven refrigerators.
- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch-sensor lamps.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

CUP HOLDERS

WARNINGS

Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders when your vehicle is moving.

Make sure that cups placed in the holders do not obstruct your vision while driving.

GLOVE BOX

The glove box is on the passenger side of the instrument panel.

You can open the glove box using the latch handle.



E223956

Glove Box with Lock (If Equipped)

You can lock the glove box using the ignition key. To lock, close the glove box and insert the ignition key into the glove box lock and rotate it clockwise. Remove the key.

To unlock the glove box, insert the ignition key into the glove box lock and rotate it counter clockwise.

CENTER CONSOLE

Stow items in the cup holder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.

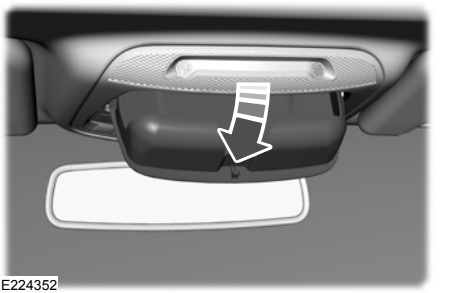
Available console features include:

- Cup Holders.
- Auxiliary Power Points.
- Coin storage.
- Media Hub.
- Cool box.



E227772

OVERHEAD CONSOLE



E224352

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

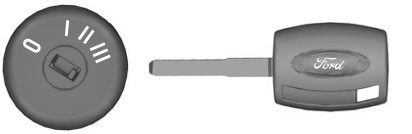
Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have it checked by a Ford Dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 10 km after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

IGNITION SWITCH



E72128

Note: *Make sure the key is clean before inserting it into any lock cylinder.*

0 (off) - The ignition is off.

I (accessory) - Allows the electrical accessories to operate while the engine is not running.

Note: *Do not leave the ignition key in this position for too long to avoid your vehicle battery losing charge.*

II (on) - All the electrical circuits are operational. Warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

III (start) - cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

STEERING WHEEL LOCK

WARNING

Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.

To lock the steering wheel:

1. Remove the key from the ignition switch.
2. Rotate the steering wheel slightly to engage the lock.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

Vehicles With Automatic Transmission

Switch the ignition on or press the brake pedal.

Vehicles With Manual Transmission

Switch the ignition on.

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE

Cold or Hot Engine

All Vehicles

Note: *When the temperature is below -15ºC, you may need to crank the engine for up to 10 seconds.*

Note: *You can only operate the starter for a limited period of time.*

Note: *After a limited number of attempts to start your engine, the system will not allow you to try again until a period of time has elapsed, for example 30 minutes.*



Switch the ignition on and wait until the glow plug indicator goes off.

Vehicles With Manual Transmission

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

Note: *Releasing the clutch pedal while the engine is starting stops the engine from cranking and returns to the ignition on position.*

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

Vehicles With Automatic Transmission

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

Note: *Releasing the brake pedal while the engine is starting stops the engine from cranking and returns to the ignition on position.*

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Start the engine.

Failure to Start

Vehicles With Manual Transmission

Note: *Remove all other keys from the center console.*

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the ignition key is turned to position **III**.

1. Fully depress the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine has started.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The filter forms part of the emissions reduction system on your vehicle. It filters harmful diesel particulates (soot) from the exhaust gas.

Regeneration

WARNING



Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

Note: *Avoid running out of fuel.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Note: *During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.*

Note: *Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.*

Note: *Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. This could happen in low ambient temperatures and independent of the engine coolant temperature, for example short journeys or low coolant temperature.*

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain its correct function. Your vehicle will carry out this process automatically.

If your journeys meet one of the following conditions:

- You drive only short distances.
- You frequently switch the ignition on and off.
- Your journeys contain a high level of acceleration and deceleration.

You must carry out occasional trips with the following conditions to assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle in more favorable conditions, which you will find at higher vehicle speeds in normal driving, on a main road or freeway for a minimum of 20 minutes. This drive may include short stops that will not affect the regeneration process.
- Avoid prolonged idling and always observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Select a suitable gear to ideally maintain engine speed between 1500 and 3000 RPM.

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

Vehicles With a Turbocharger

WARNING

Do not switch the engine off when it is running at high speed. If you do, the turbocharger will continue running after the engine oil pressure has dropped to zero. This will lead to premature turbocharger bearing wear.

Release the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine has reached idle speed and then switch it off.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNINGS

Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Fuel ethanol and gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking “Antabuse” or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.

FUEL QUALITY

WARNINGS

Do not mix diesel with oil, gasoline or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.

Do not add kerosene, paraffin or gasoline to diesel. This could cause damage to the fuel system.

Note: *We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Note: *We do not recommend the use of additional additives or other engine treatments for normal vehicle use.*

Note: *We do not recommend the use of additional additives to prevent fuel waxing.*

Biodiesel Usage

WARNING

Do not use raw oils, fats or waste cooking greases, these are not biodiesel.

Your vehicle is suitable for use with biodiesel blends up to 10% (B10).You can achieve acceptable engine performance and durability using B10 by adhering to below guidelines.

Note: *Use diesel fuel that meets the equivalent specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification, from a trusted fuel supplier*

Note: *If your vehicle experiences low temperature fuel waxing issues, consider using different diesel brands or diesel with lower biodiesel content.*

Long-Term Storage

Most diesel fuels contain biodiesel. Do not leave vehicles filled with B10 fuels parked for more than 1 month. Diesel fuels containing biodiesel can degrade quickly when stored for long periods of time, especially when exposed to warm and humid conditions. Alternatively, we recommend that you seek advice from your dealer.

Diesel-Winter Driving

Diesel fuel purchased in the city and coastal regions often has different cold temperature properties than diesel sold in Alpine regions. Wax may form in the fuel lines in the vehicles left outside in below zero temperature for a longer time. This means that the vehicle will not start or run correctly until the wax has melted. To avoid this problem, if a prolonged or overnight stay is planned in an alpine region then it is strongly recommended that the vehicle carry enough fuel to get to the Alpine region and is then refuelled locally so that at least 50% of the fuel volume is Alpine mix diesel. At the time of publication, Alpine mix diesel is available at the following BP service stations: **Victoria** Bright, Corryong and Mansfield **NSW** Jindabyne, Thredbo, Tumut, Talbingo, Adaminaby and Cooma. Please confirm current availability at the time of your trip.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Avoid running out of fuel. This may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refuelling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal. Crank time will be longer than usual.
- Normally, adding 4 L of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If the vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep grade, more than 4 L may be required.

Fuel Run Dry Protection Feature

Your vehicle is fitted with a fuel run dry protection system to prevent engine damage.

The vehicle will enter an engine misfire mode and shutdown at a pre determined distance after the **Distance to Empty** becomes zero.

Refill the fuel tank with a minimum of 4 L diesel before resetting the feature.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Reset the fuel run dry protection feature by following the below steps:

1. Insert the ignition key and turn to position **II** (Ignition).
2. Hold the key in the position for 20 seconds and turn back to **0** (Off).
3. Repeat the steps three times to complete the reset procedure.

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling.
- Do not fill a fuel container while it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER

WARNING

Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during use, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

Driving with a Catalytic Converter

WARNINGS

Avoid running out of fuel.

Do not crank the engine for long periods.

WARNINGS

Do not run the engine when a spark plug lead is disconnected.

Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump-Starting the Vehicle** (page ?).

Do not switch the ignition off when driving.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM

Your vehicle has a selective catalytic reduction system to help reduce exhaust emission levels by injecting diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue®) into the exhaust system.

The engine may not start if you tamper with or disable the selective catalytic reduction system.

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)Guideline

- Do not put Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)in the vehicle fuel tank.
- Do not put in the vehicle fuel tank. This can cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.
- Do not overfill the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)tank.
- Do not dilute Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)with water or any other liquid.
- Do not re-use a Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)container.
- Do not store in direct sunlight.
- Store at temperatures between -5ºC and 20ºC.
- Do not store a Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)container in your vehicle.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

- Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)is non-flammable, non-toxic, colorless and water-soluble.
- An ammonia odor may be smelled when the cap is removed or during refill. Refill Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) in a well ventilated area.

Typical Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)Usage

The charts below illustrate approximate Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)usage for the given distances traveled under various driving conditions and when using the power take off. Your usage may vary depending on: driving style, trailer towing, loaded vehicle weight, weather, idle time, PTO usage.

5-Door			
Driving style	Trailer towing / aggressive or city driving	Normal Driving	Steady Highway Driving
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) usage	3,000–12,000 km	12,000–16,000 km	16,000–18,000 km

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)Level

For the system to operate correctly, you must maintain the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) level.



A warning lamp will illuminate and a message will appear in the information display when the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)level is low and needs to be refilled. Refill your vehicle with a minimum 10 L of AdBlue®.

Note: *If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible. See* ***Information Displays*** *(page 66).*

Filling the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)Tank

WARNINGS

Do not allow diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) to come into contact with eyes, skin or clothing. Should the fluid come into contact with eyes, flush them with plenty of water and seek medical attention. Clean affected skin with soap and water. If swallowed, drink plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.

Refill the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) tank in a well-ventilated area. When removing the tank cap or a container cap, ammonia vapor may escape. Ammonia vapor is an irritant to the eyes, skin and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapor can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose resulting in watering eyes or severe coughing.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing



E201520

The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)tank filler neck is located next to the fuel filler neck and has a blue cap. Fill the tank using a fluid pump at a Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)filling station or a Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)container. The capacity of the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)tank is 18 L.

Note: *You must open the fuel filler door before you can open the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)filler door.*

Note: *Immediately wash off any Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)that has spilled on to a painted surface with mild soapy water.*

Filling the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)Tank Using a Container

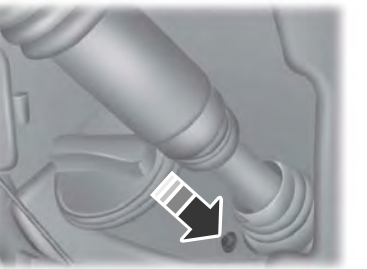
The following procedure applies to Motorcraft® Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) or similar diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue®) bottles; for other brands or bottle types, refer to the instructions on the bottle label.

1. Remove the cap from the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) container. Remove the spout from the bottle and insert the straw end into the bottle. Ensure you align the arrow above the nut with the bottle handle and the small tube end extends into the far corner of the bottle. Twist the spout nut on the container until it is tight.



E163355

2. Open the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) filler port on your vehicle by turning the blue cap counterclockwise. Do not put Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) in the fuel tank. This can cause engine damage not covered by your vehicle's warranty.



E163356

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

3. Lift and hold the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) container, without tipping, and insert the spout into the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) filler port until the small black seal on the spout completely seats into the filler port.



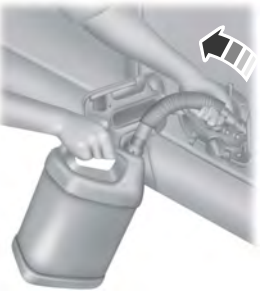
E163357

4. While filling, the fluid level in the bottle will continually drop.



E163358

5. When the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) tank is full, the fluid level in the bottle will stop dropping, indicating the fluid has stopped flowing.



E163359

6. Once the level in the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) bottle has stopped dropping, return the container to the vertical position slightly below the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) filler port and let any Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) drain out of the spout. DO NOT try to continue to add Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) to the tank by shaking or repositioning the container to induce flow. This may cause spilling and overfill the tank. Overfilling the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) tank can cause damage to the tank.
7. Once the spout has drained, remove the spout from the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) filler port and install the blue cap on the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) filler port.
8. Remove the spout from the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) container and install the cap back on the bottle.
9. Wipe away any Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) that has spilled on painted surfaces with water and a damp cloth.

Note: *Note: If there is Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) left in the container, retain it for later use. The spout is re-useable. Wash the spout with clean water prior to storage. Do not use the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) spout with any other fluid.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Filling the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) Tank Using a Fuel Station Pump

Filling the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) tank using a pump is similar to refuelling your vehicle. The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) pump nozzle will shut off automatically when the tank is full.

Note: *Some filling stations utilize a magnetic mechanism in the pump nozzle that may prevent refilling the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) tank. To overcome this issue you will need to locate another filling station or use a refill container.*

Filling the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) Tank in Cold Climates

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) may freeze if the ambient temperature is below -11°C. Your vehicle has a preheating system which allows Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) to operate below -11°C. If you do not use your vehicle for an extended period when the ambient temperature is below -11°C, the fluid in the tank may freeze. If the tank is overfilled and the fluid freezes it may damage the tank. This is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Inoperative Selective Catalytic Reduction System, Poor Quality or Contaminated Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®)



If the system becomes contaminated or inoperative, a warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display. See **Personalized Settings** (page 72). Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

REFUELING

WARNINGS

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with the incorrect fuel. This could damage the engine. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

Do not use any kind of flames or heat near the fuel system. The fuel system is under pressure. There is a risk of injury if the fuel system is leaking.

If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the fuel filler flap briefly from a distance not less than 200 mm.

We recommend that you wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

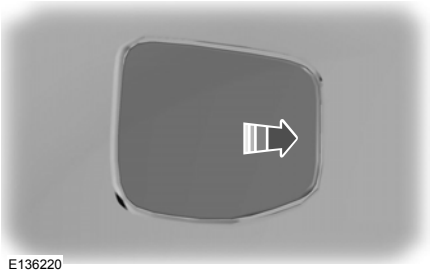
Stop refueling after the fuel nozzle stops the second time. Additional fuel will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank which could lead to fuel overflowing. Fuel spillage could be hazardous to other road users.

Do not remove the fuel nozzle from its fully inserted position during the refueling process.

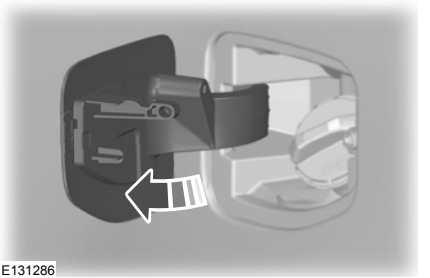
Note: *Central locking also locks and unlocks the fuel filler flap. See* ***Locking and Unlocking*** *(page 31).*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

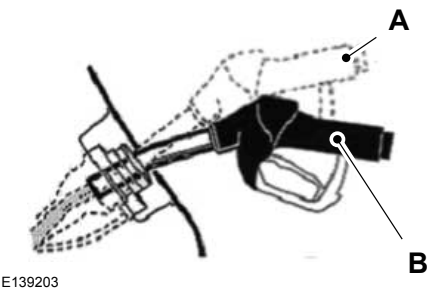
Vehicles with Fuel Filler Cap


E136220

1. Press the flap to open it.


E131286

2. Open the flap fully until it engages.
3. Turn the fuel filler cap anti-clockwise.



E139203

4. Hold the fuel nozzle in position B during refueling. Holding the fuel nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel nozzle before the fuel tank is full.


E119081

5. Slightly raise the fuel nozzle to remove it.
6. Install the fuel cap by rotating it clockwise until it clicks.
7. Close and push the fuel filler flap to lock it.

Note: *If you must replace the fuel filler cap, replace only with the cap designed for your vehicle. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel tank or fuel system if the correct genuine Ford fuel filler cap is not used.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNINGS

Always apply the parking brake fully and make sure you shift into park (P). Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Note: *A cold engine has a higher idle speed. This will increase the tendency for your vehicle to creep when you have selected a drive gear.*

Selector lever positions



P	Park
R	Reverse
N	Neutral
D	Drive
S	Sport mode and manual shifting
S-	Manual shift down
S+	Manual shift up

Press the button on the selector lever to select reverse (R) or park (P). The current gear is shown in the display screen.

Park (P)

WARNING

Move the transmission selector lever to park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

Note: *To move the selector lever from park (P), apply the footbrake with ignition key in position II.*

Note: *An audible warning will sound if you open the driver's door and you have not moved the selector lever to park (P). The battery saver will deactivate the audible warning after a period of time.*

In this position, power is not transmitted to the driven wheels and the transmission is locked. You can start the engine with the transmission selector lever in this position.

Reverse (R)

WARNING

Move the transmission selector lever to reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.

Shift the selector lever to reverse (R) to allow your vehicle to move backward.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Neutral (N)

WARNING

In neutral (N) your vehicle has the ability to roll freely. If you intend to leave your vehicle, make sure you apply the parking brake.

In this position, power is not transmitted to the driven wheels but the transmission is not locked. You can start the engine with the gearshift lever in this position.

Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy and smoothness. Shift the selector lever to drive (D) to allow your vehicle to move forward and shift automatically through the forward gears.

The transmission shifts to the appropriate gear for optimum performance based on ambient temperature, road gradient, vehicle load and your input.

Sport Mode (S)

Switch on sport mode by shifting the gearshift lever to sport (S). In sport mode the transmission selects the optimum gear for best performance. This gear selection is typically lower than that of drive (D) and the shifts are faster.

SelectShift™ Automatic Transmission

This feature gives you the ability to change gears up or down as desired.

As long as the engine speed does not exceed the maximum allowable limit, downshifts are allowed. SelectShift automatically downshifts at low engine speeds in order to prevent engine stalls.

Note: *Engine damage may occur if you maintain excessive engine revving without shifting.*

SelectShift does not automatically upshift, even if the engine is approaching the RPM limit, unless the accelerator pedal is at full travel.

With the selector lever in the sport (S) position:

- Move the lever forward (-) to downshift.
- Move the lever backward (+) to upshift.



E136209

To exit SelectShift mode, return the selector lever to drive (D).

When your vehicle is stationary, only the 1st and 2nd gears can be selected. Manual shifting is sequential, therefore gears cannot be skipped.

Emergency Park Position Release Lever

WARNINGS

Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

WARNINGS

When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *For some markets this feature is disabled.*

Your vehicle has a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents moving the gearshift lever from park (P) when the ignition is on and you do not press the brake pedal.

The system requires service if you cannot move the gearshift lever out of park (P) with the ignition on and the brake pedal pressed. It is possible that a fuse has blown or your vehicle's brake lamps are not operating properly. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 192).

If the fuse is not blown and the brake lamps are working properly, the following procedure allows you to move the selector lever from park (P):

Note: *Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off before performing this procedure.*


E132721

1. Lift up the cover in the center console next to the transmission selector lever with a suitable tool.
2. Push down the locking button in the slot and simultaneously move the selector lever out of park (P) and into another gear.

Note: *See an authorized dealer as soon as possible if this procedure is used.*

Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning

This feature may increase durability and provide consistent shift feel over the life of your vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm shifts, soft shifts or both. This operation is considered normal and does not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process fully updates transmission operation.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

Note: *Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Note: *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

This system is a proactive system. It has the ability to anticipate wheel slip and transfer torque to the rear wheels before slip occurs. Even when wheel slip is not present, the system is continuously making adjustments to the torque distribution, in an attempt to improve straight line and cornering behavior, both on and off road.

The system automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on.

All components of the system are sealed and do not require maintenance.

USING FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE

WARNING



Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The four-wheel drive system in your vehicle is an intelligent system that continuously monitors vehicle conditions and automatically adjusts the power distribution between the front and rear wheels. It combines transparent all-surface operation with highly capable four-wheel drive. The four-wheel drive system is always active and requires no driver input, however the driver can optimize more control by utilizing the terrain management switch and low range selection switch, mounted in the center console, for the correct terrain conditions. See **Off-Road Driving** (page 179).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL (If Equipped)

Note: *The electronic locking differential is for off-road use only and is not for use on dry pavement. Using the electronic locking differential on dry pavement will result in increased tire wear, noise, vibration and damage to the axle.*

The electronic locking differential is a device housed in the rear axle that allows both rear wheels to turn at the same speed. The electronic locking differential can provide additional traction should your vehicle become stuck. You can activate the differential electronically and shift it on the fly within the differential operating speed range. The differential is for use in mud, rocks, sand, or any off-road condition where you need maximum traction. It is not for use on dry pavement.

The following conditions will affect the electronic locking differential:

- The electronic locking differential does not engage if your vehicle speed is too high (above 35 km/h in Normal mode).
- The electronic locking differential automatically disengages when your vehicle speed is too high and automatically re-engages when your vehicle speed is low enough.
- The electronic locking differential may not engage if you are cornering or if one rear wheel is spinning. A message may appear in the information display informing you to release the accelerator.
- The speeds for engagement or disengagement change in different terrain modes.
- The system has the ability to disable the electronic locking differential during driving maneuvers when necessary.

When you switch the system on, if you do not meet the required conditions for electronic locking differential activation, the appropriate information guiding you through the activation process appears in the information display.

Activating the Electronic Locking Differential

Note: *Do not use electronic locking differential on dry, hard surfaced roads. Doing so will produce excessive noise, vibration, increase tire wear and damage to the axle .*

Note: *If the electronic locking differential has difficulty disengaging, release the accelerator pedal and turn the steering wheel while rolling.*



E206626

To engage the electronic locking differential, press the centre console mounted switch.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Disc brakes

Wet brake discs result in reduced braking efficiency. Dab the brake pedal when driving from a car wash to remove the film of water.

ABS

WARNING

The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

The ABS helps you to maintain full steering and directional stability when you brake heavily in an emergency, by preventing the road wheels from locking.

Brake override

In the event that the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, applying steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal will both slow the vehicle and reduce engine power.

If you experience this condition:

1. Apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. Switch the engine off.
3. Select park (P) (automatic transmission only).
4. Apply the parking brake.

Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interferences. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to a dealer.

Brake Inspection

Disc brake pads should be checked to confirm that each disc brake pad lining has a suitable amount of friction material for safe use.

Inspection and Verification

Note: *Disc brake pads must be replaced as an axle set. Do not replace an individual disc brake pad or disc brake pads on one brake assembly only.*

1. Using a suitable tool, such as an inspection mirror, look into the inspection hole on the back of each disc brake caliper.
2. Inspect the inner and outer disc brake pads to confirm each disc brake pad lining measures 1.5 mm thick or more.

Note: *See your authorized dealer if any disc brake pad lining is under 1.5 mm thickness.*

Inspect each brake caliper and anchor bracket for corrosion, wear, or damage.

Wear Adjustment

Automatic adjustment of disc brake friction material during brake application occurs as follows:

- The piston slides within its bore to a new position, taking up the brake pad wear.
- The brake caliper moves on its guide pins, taking up the brake pad wear.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

Note: *When the system is operating, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

The anti-lock braking system will not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

PARKING BRAKE

WARNING

Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you shift the gearshift lever to park (P). Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

Note: *Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.*

To apply the parking brake:

1. Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent.

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, shift the gearshift lever to park (P) and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, shift the gearshift lever to park (P) and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

To release the parking brake:

1. Press the brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the lever up slightly.
3. Press the release button and push the lever down.

HILL START ASSIST

WARNINGS

The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and move the transmission selector lever into position park (P).

You must remain in your vehicle once you have turned the system on.

The system is active unless ESC warning lamp is turned off. During all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

If the engine is revved excessively or if a malfunction is detected, the system will turn off and ESC warning lamp will turn on.

There is a short delay in the system activation of up to two seconds after the shifting the lever to drive (D) or reverse (R) in vehicles with automatic transmission.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes are released automatically once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, (for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space).

The system will turn on automatically on any slope which can result in significant vehicle rollback.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Note: *Hill start assist is available in vehicles equipped with electronic stability control (ESC).*

Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed.
2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system will be activated automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for approximately two or three seconds. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will be released automatically.

Enable and Disable the System

You can enable the system only if the following conditions are met:

- The engine is running.
- All doors are fully closed.
- The parking brake is fully disengaged.
- No failure mode is present.
- Accelerator pedal is not depressed.
- Vehicle is completely stopped.
- Uphill: Gear shift lever should be in position drive (D) for Automatic transmission and in any position other than reverse for manual transmission.
- Downhill: Gear shift lever should be in reverse (R).

To disable the system, perform one of the following:

- Apply the parking brake.
- Open any door.
- Drive off uphill without re-applying the brake.
- Wait for one to two seconds after you remove your foot from the brake pedal.
- If the system is active in a forward gear, select reverse gear.
- If the system is active in neutral, release the clutch pedal (Manual transmission).
- If the system is active in reverse gear, select neutral.

Switching the System On and Off

Note: *You can only switch the system on and off if your vehicle has a manual transmission.*

Note: *The system will remain on or off depending on how it was last set.*

Your vehicle comes with this feature already enabled. If required, you can switch this feature off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 66).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

USING TRACTION CONTROL

Traction control forms part of the stability control system.

Note: *The system automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on.*

Note: *Switching off the stability control will turn off the system.*

In certain situations (e.g. stuck in snow or mud), turning the system off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin with full engine power.

Traction control is an enhanced feature of stability control system and automatically detects the wheel spin when you accelerate. If this situation occurs, the system applies your vehicle brakes at individual wheels and if necessary, reduces engine power.

Note: *Shifting to 4x4 Low deactivates engine traction control but brake traction control remains active.*

To switch off the traction control, See **Using Stability Control** (page 136).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the electronic stability control sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your electronic stability control system activates, SLOW DOWN.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.
- A vibration in the brake pedal.
- The brake pedal is stiffer than usual.
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the systems applies higher brake forces.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

Electronic Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power.

Roll Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent rollovers by detecting your vehicle's roll motion and the rate at which it changes by applying the brakes to one or more wheels individually.

Curve Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to follow the road when cornering severely or avoiding objects in the roadway. Curve Control operates by reducing engine power and, if necessary, applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually.

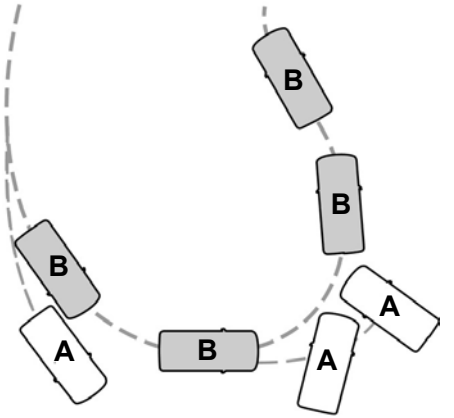
Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Traction Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **Principle of Operation** (page 135).



E207884



E72903

A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.

B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

USING STABILITY CONTROL

Note: *The system is automatically activated when you start the engine.*

To switch off the stability control, press the stablity control button on the floor console.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNING

Before driving off-road it is absolutely essential that in-experienced drivers become fully familiar with the vehicle's controls. In particular, Sport mode and Hill Descent Control (HDC).

Hill descent control (HDC) operates in conjunction with stability control (ESC) to provide greater control when off-road, particularly when descending steep slopes. HDC operation is fully automatic when engaged.

Engine braking controls the speed of the descent during an off-road hill descent. If engine braking alone is insufficient to control the vehicle's speed, HDC will slow the vehicle using the braking system.

Note: *Use HDC only in first or reverse gear in manual transmission vehicles.*

Note: *Use HDC only in drive (D), reverse (R) or sport (S) mode in automatic transmission vehicles. When in drvie (D), the vehicle will select the most appropriate gear.*

USING HILL DESCENT CONTROL

Selecting HDC

Select HDC at speeds less than 60 km/h. To select HDC, press the hill descent control switch located on the floor console.



E216471

Note: *HDC will be active at speeds less than 35 km/h and deactivated above 40 km/h but will not turn off until vehicle exceeds 60 km/h.*

Note: *HDC will turn off when you switch the ignition off.*



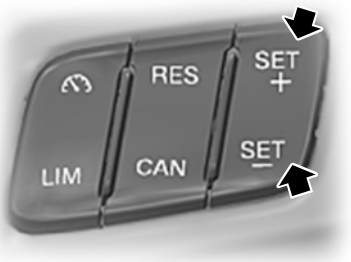
The HDC switch will illuminate continuously to indicate that HDC is fully active.

HDC will temporarily deactivate during the following conditions:

- The brakes are hot. Operation resumes once the brakes cool down.
- The stability control indicator on warning lamp is illuminated and operating.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

HDC Operation



E206132

Cruise control switches on the steering wheel allow you to control your hill descent speed. **SET +** increases the speed and **SET -** decreases the speed.

Changing the Set Speed

- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.
- Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**. The set speed will change in approximately 1 km/h increments.

Pressing the accelerator pedal or brake pedal will increase or decrease the speed respectively.

Note: *Each gear has a pre-determined minimum speed.*

Note: *Descent speed will only increase on a slope steep enough to provide additional momentum. Therefore, use of the **SET+** switch on a gentle slope may not increase the speed.*

Note: *The Brakes will override the HDC if the brake pedal is pressed. The system resumes on the release of the brake pedal.*

Note: *HDC assistance will fade out gradually if you switch the system off. This is to prevent the loss of control if you press the HDC switch unintentionally. If assistance is still required, you can switch back the HDC on. The control will resume at a speed the vehicle is travelling when the pedal is released.*

Note: *You may hear a noise from the system. This is normal.*

Note: *When HDC is operating, the ESC on warning lamp will flash.*

HDC operates only if the vehicle speed is within the specified range even if the system is on permanently during off-road driving.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

If your vehicles has a non-Ford approved trailer tow module the system may not correctly detect objects.

The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.

The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.

The system does not detect objects that are moving away from your vehicle. They will only be detected shortly after they start to move toward your vehicle.

Take particular care when reversing with a tow ball arm or a rear fitted accessory. For example, a bicycle carrier. The rear parking aid will only indicate the approximate distance from the rear bumper to an object.

Sensing is only an aid to detect some objects when moving forward or backward at low speeds. Traffic control systems, inclement weather or an external motor and fan can affect the sensors; this may include reduced performance or false activation. To help avoid personal injury you must read and understand the limitations of the system detailed in this section.

WARNINGS

The parking aid system may not prevent contact with small or moving objects that are close to the ground. The parking aid system gives an audible warning when it detects a large object helping to avoid damage to your vehicle. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

Note: *If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the sensors briefly from a distance not less than 20 cm.*

Note: *If your vehicle has a tow ball arm, the system is turned off automatically when trailer lamps (or lighting boards) are connected to the 13-pin socket through a Ford approved trailer tow module.*

Note: *Keep the sensors free from dirt, ice or snow. Do not clean with sharp objects.*

Note: *The system may emit false alerts if it detects a signal using the same frequency as the sensors or if your vehicle is fully loaded.*

Note: *The outer sensors may detect the side walls of a garage. If the distance between the outer sensors and the side wall remains constant for three seconds, the alert will turn off. As you continue the inner sensors will detect objects directly behind your vehicle.*

REAR PARKING AID (If Equipped)

The rear sensors are only active when the transmission is in reverse (R). As your vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases. When the obstacle is less than 30 cm away, the warning sounds continuously. If

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

the system detects a stationary or receding object farther than 30 cm from the corners of the bumper, the tone sounds for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the warning sounds again.



E130178

Coverage area of up to 1.8 m from the rear bumper. There may be decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.

The system provides audio warnings only when your vehicle is moving or when your vehicle is stationary and the detected obstacle is less than 30 cm away from the bumper.

Obstacle Distance Indicator

The system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display.

The indicator displays:

- As the distance to the obstacle changes the indicator blocks illuminate the position of obstacle relative to the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks are greyed out.

FRONT PARKING AID (If Equipped)

The front sensors are active when the transmission is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle is not in a standstill position.



E187330

Coverage area is up to 70 cm from the front bumper. There is decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

When your vehicle approaches an object, a warning tone sounds. When your vehicle moves closer to an object, the warning tone repeat rate increases. The warning tone sounds continuously when an object is 30 cm or less from the front bumper.

Obstacle Distance Indicator

The system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display.

The indicator displays:

- As the distance to the obstacle decreases the indicator blocks illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks are greyed out.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the front sensing system provides audible warnings when your vehicle is moving and the detected obstacle is moving towards your vehicle. Once the vehicle is stationary, the audible warning will be stopped after 2 seconds.

If the transmission is in drive (D) or any other forward gear (for example, sport (S), manual transmissions), the front sensing system provides audible and visual warnings when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 12 km/h and an obstacle is located inside the detection area. Once the vehicle is stationary, the audible warning will be stopped after 2 seconds and the visual indication stops after 4 seconds. If the obstacles detected are within 30 cm, the visual indication remains on.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

If the transmission is in neutral (N), the system provides visual indication only when your vehicle is moving at 12 km/h or below and an obstacle is located inside the detection area. Once your vehicle is stationary, the visual indication will stop after 4 seconds.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST (If Equipped)

Parallel Parking

WARNINGS

You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.

Note: *The driver is always responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required by grabbing the steering wheel or pushing the active park assist button.*

The system detects an available parallel parking space and automatically steers your vehicle into the space (hands-free) while you control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you to park your vehicle.

If you are uncomfortable with the proximity to any vehicle or object, you may choose to override the system.

Note: *The blindspot information system does not detect traffic alongside or behind your vehicle during a park assist maneuver.*

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- You use a spare tire or a tire significantly worn more than the other tires.
- You use a unauthorized tire size.
- You try to park on a tight curve.
- Something passes between the front bumper and the parking space (a pedestrian or cyclist).
- The edge of the neighboring parked vehicle is high off the ground (for example, a bus, tow truck or flatbed truck).
- The weather conditions are poor (heavy rain, snow, fog, etc).

Note: *Keep the sensors, located on the bumper or fascia, free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. Covered sensors can affect the system's accuracy. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves or cause ultrasonic interference (motorcycle exhaust, truck air brakes or horns).*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Do not use the system if:

- You have attached a foreign object (bike rack or trailer) to the front or rear of your vehicle or close to the sensors.
- You have attached an overhanging object (surfboard) to the roof.
- A foreign object damages or obstructs the front or rear bumper or side sensors.
- The correct tire size is not in use on your vehicle (for example, a mini-spare tire).

Using Active Park Assist - Parallel Parking

Press the button located on the center console near the gearshift lever or the right side of the center stack once.

When driving at a speed less than 35 km/h the system automatically scans both sides of your vehicle for an available parking space. The system displays a message and a corresponding graphic to indicate it is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator to display the searching results either the left-hand side or right-hand side of your vehicle.


E130107

Note: *If the direction indicators are not used, the system defaults to the passenger side of your vehicle.*

Note: *The system passively searches for parking spaces prior to pressing the button, so activating the system is still possible while passing a parking space.*

When the system finds a suitable space, it displays a message and a tone sounds. Stop your vehicle and follow the instructions on the screen. If your vehicle is moving very slowly, you may need to pull forward a short distance before the system is ready to park.

If the vehicle has been travelling over a certain distance, the found space may be discarded and the system will go back to searching for a suitable space.

Note: *You must observe that the selected space remains clear of obstructions at all times during the maneuver.*

Note: *Active park assist may not detect street furniture and other items. You must make sure the selected space is suitable for parking.*

Note: *You should drive your vehicle within 1.5 m to the other vehicles while passing a parking space.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

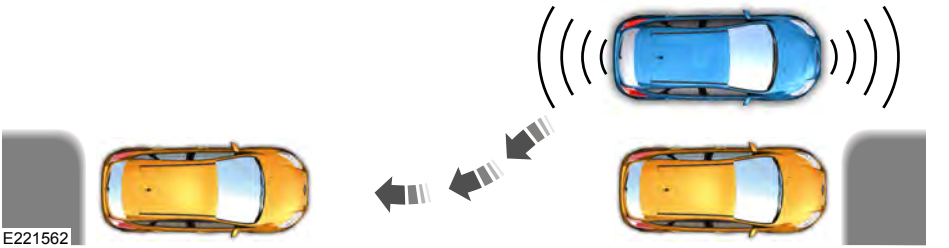
Note: *The system always offers the last detected parking space (for example, if your vehicle detects multiple spaces while you are driving, it offers the last one).*

Note: *If driven above approximately 35 km/h, the system shows a message to alert you to reduce your vehicle speed.*

Automatic Steering into Parking Space

Note: *If your vehicle speed exceeds 9 km/h or the maneuver is interrupted (driver input), the system switches off and you need to take full control of your vehicle.*

When you shift the transmission into reverse (R), with your hands off the wheel (and nothing obstructing its movement), your vehicle steers itself into the space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle back and forth in the space.


E221562

When you think your vehicle is properly parked, or you hear a solid tone from the parking aid (accompanied by a display message and a chime), bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

When automatic steering is complete, the system displays a message and a tone sounds, indicating that the active park assist process is finished. You are responsible for checking the parking job and making any necessary corrections before leaving your vehicle.

Deactivating the Active Park Assist Feature

Manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the active park assist button when the system is enabled.
- Grabbing the steering wheel during an active maneuver.
- Driving above approximately 35 km/h for 30 seconds during an active park search.
- Driving above 9 km/h during automatic steering.
- Switching off the traction control system.

Certain vehicle conditions can also deactivate the system, such as:

- Traction control has activated.
- There is an anti-lock brake system activation or failure.

If a problem occurs with the system, a warning message displays accompanied by a tone. Occasional system messages may occur in normal operation. For recurring or frequent system faults, contact an authorized dealer to have your vehicle serviced.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Troubleshooting the System

The system does not look for a space
The traction control system is off.
The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.

The system does not offer a particular space
The sensors may be covered (for example, snow, ice or dirt buildup). Covered senors can affect the system's functionality.
There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.
There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.
The parking space is farther than 1.5 m or closer than 0.4 m away.
The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.
Your vehicle is going faster than 35 km/h for parallel parking.

The system does not position the vehicle where I want in the space
Your vehicle is rolling in the opposite direction of the transmission (rolling forward with reverse [R] selected).
An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from aligning your vehicle properly.
Vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be positioned correctly.
You pulled your vehicle too far past the parking space. The system performs best when you drive the same distance past the parking space.
The tires may not be installed or maintained correctly (not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes).
A repair or alteration has changed detection capabilities.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

The system does not position the vehicle where I want in the space
A parked vehicle has a high attachment (salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed).
The parking space length or position of parked objects changed after your vehicle passed.
The temperature around your vehicle changes quickly (driving from a heated garage into the cold, or after leaving a car wash).

REAR VIEW CAMERA (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

The operation of the camera may vary depending on the ambient temperature, vehicle and road conditions.

The distances shown in the display may differ from the actual distance.

Do not place objects in front of the camera.

The camera is on the liftgate near the license plate.



E142435

Turning the Rear View Camera On

WARNING

The camera may not detect objects that are very close to your vehicle.

Switch the ignition and the audio unit on.

Move the transmission selector lever to reverse (R).

The image displays in the center of the instrument panel.

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- Dark areas.
- Intense light.
- If the ambient temperature increases or decreases rapidly.
- If the camera is wet, for example in rain or high humidity.
- If the camera's view is obstructed, for example by mud.

Using the Display

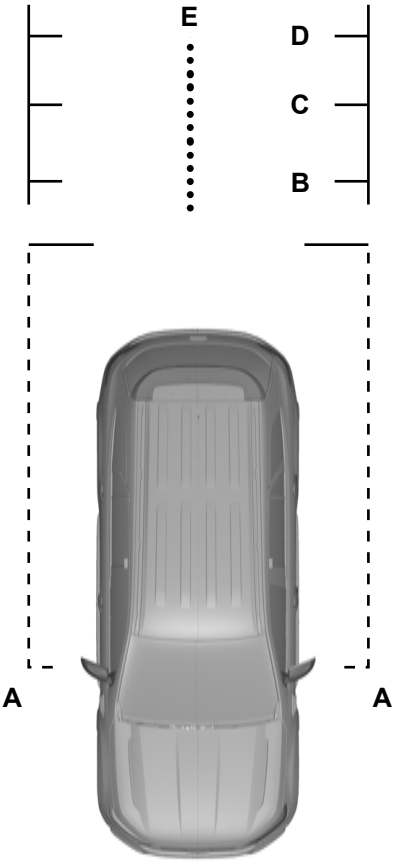
WARNINGS

Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.

Marks are for general guidance only, and are calculated for vehicles in maximum load conditions on an even road surface.

The lines show the distance from the outer edge of the front tire plus 50 millimetres (2 inches) and the rear bumper.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing



E200774

A Exterior mirror clearance - 0.05 metres (2 inches).

B Red - up to 0.45 metres (17 inches).

C Amber - 1.0 metres (40 inches).

D Green - 1.8 metres (71 inches).

E Black - center line of the projected vehicle path.

Note: *When reversing with a trailer the camera shows the direction of your vehicle and not the direction of the trailer.*

Turning the Rear View Camera Off

Move the transmission selector lever from reverse (R).

Note: *The system will automatically switch off once your vehicle speed has reached approximately 15 km/h if you have switched on the camera delay in the information display.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h.

USING CRUISE CONTROL

WARNINGS

Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Note: *Cruise control disengages if the vehicle speed decreases more than 16 km/h below the set speed when driving uphill.*

To help the system to maintain the set speed when going downhill, downshift to a lower gear.



E201284

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On

Press the cruise control button.



The indicator appears in the information display.

Setting the Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press ***SET+*** or ***SET-***.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: *The indicator changes color.*

Changing the Set Speed

- Press ***SET+*** or ***SET-*** to change the set speed in small increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press ***SET+*** or ***SET-***.
- Press and hold ***SET+*** or ***SET-***. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

Canceling the Set Speed

Press ***CAN*** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed does not erase.

Resuming the Set Speed

Press ***RES***.

Switching Cruise Control Off

Note: *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

Press the cruise control button when the system is in standby mode, or switch the ignition off.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Always pay close attention to changing road conditions when using adaptive cruise control. The system does not replace attentive driving. Failing to pay attention to the road may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

Do not use the adaptive cruise control when entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts or non-vehicular traffic or roads that are winding, slippery, unpaved, or steep slopes.

Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

Do not use adaptive cruise control when towing a trailer that has trailer brakes. The auto-brake component of the adaptive cruise control system does not operate the trailer brakes. Using adaptive cruise control when towing a trailer that has trailer brakes may result in the loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

Adaptive cruise control may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h.

Adaptive cruise control is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

Adaptive cruise control does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

Adaptive cruise control does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

WARNINGS

Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

Note: *It is your responsibility to stay alert, drive safely and be in control of the vehicle at all times.*

The system adjusts your vehicle speed to maintain the set gap between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane. You can select four gap settings.

The system uses a radar sensor that projects a beam directly in front of your vehicle.



E248386

The adaptive cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

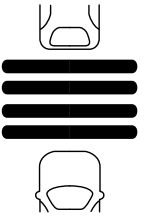
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On

Press ***CAN/OFF***.



The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

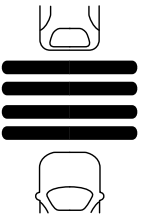
Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing


E164805

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed

Note: *When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.*

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press ***SET-***.
3. A green indicator light, the current gap setting and your set speed appear in the information display.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.


E164805

5. A vehicle graphic illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Following a Vehicle

WARNINGS

When following a vehicle, your vehicle does not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor does your vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Always apply the brakes when necessary. Failing to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. You should always apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

Note: *When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a direction indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.*

Note: *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- Your vehicle speed falls below 20 km/h.
- You set a new gap distance.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

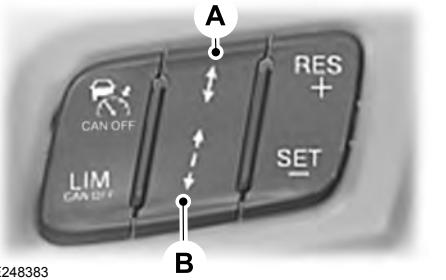
If the system determines that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, an audible warning sounds when the system continues to brake. A red warning bar displays on the windshield and you must take immediate action.

Setting the Gap Distance

Note: *The gap setting is time dependent and therefore the distance automatically adjusts with your vehicle speed.*

Note: *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*

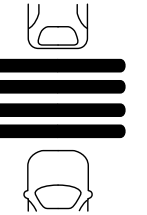
You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.



E248383

A Gap decrease.

B Gap increase.



E164805

The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the image.

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Set speed km/h	Graphic display, bars indicated between vehicles	Time gap, seconds	Gap m
100	1	0.8	28
100	2	1.2	39
100	3	1.6	50
100	4	2.1	61

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Overriding the Set Speed

WARNING

If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

When you override the system, the green indicator light illuminates and the vehicle graphic does not appear in the information display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

Changing the Set Speed

- Press ***RES+*** or ***SET-*** to change the set speed in small increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release ***RES+*** or ***SET-***.
- Press and hold ***RES+*** or ***SET-*** to change the set speed in large increments. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

Canceling the Set Speed

Press ***CAN/OFF*** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed does not erase.

Resuming the Set Speed

Note: *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

Press ***RES+***. Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

Automatic Cancellation

Note: *If the engine speed drops too low, the information display indicates low engine speed. Shift to a lower gear (manual transmission only) to avoid automatic cancellation.*

The system does not operate below 20 km/h. An audible warning sounds and the automatic braking releases if the vehicle drops below this speed.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The tires lose traction.
- The engine speed is too low.
- You apply the parking brake.

Hilly Condition Usage

Note: *An audible alarm sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool. The system functions normally again when the brakes have cooled.*

Select a lower gear during prolonged downhill driving on steep slopes, such as mountainous areas, when the system is active. In such situations, the system needs additional engine braking to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent the brakes from overheating.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off

Note: *You erase the set speed and gap setting when you switch the system off.*

Press ***CAN/OFF*** when the system is in standby mode, or switch the ignition off.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

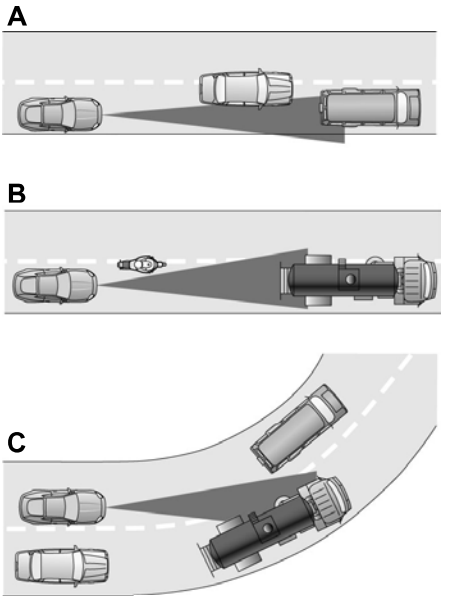
Detection Issues

WARNINGS

On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle graphic does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.



E71621

Detection issues can occur:

A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.

B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.

C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and take action when necessary.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

System Not Available

The system may not turn on if there is:

- A blocked sensor.
- High brake temperature.
- A failure in the system or a related system.

Blocked Sensor



E145632

Note: *You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.*

A message displays if something obstructs the radar signals from the sensor. The sensor is in the lower grille. The system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function when something blocks the sensor.

Possible Causes and Actions for This Message Displaying:

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is free from obstruction.
Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
Water, snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.

Due to the nature of radar technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears, or clears after you restart your vehicle.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Switching to Normal Cruise Control

WARNING

Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

You can manually change from adaptive cruise control to normal cruise control through the information display.

The cruise control indicator light replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator light if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not automatically respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain set speed.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

SPEED LIMITER

Principle of Operation

WARNING

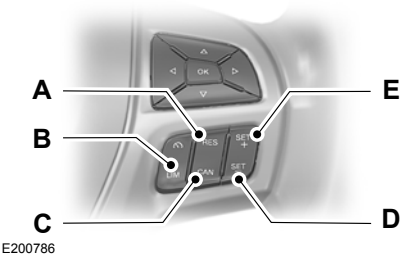
When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays.

The system allows you to set a speed to which your vehicle becomes limited. The set speed sets the effective maximum speed of your vehicle. You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

Using the System

Note: *If you briefly press the accelerator, for example when overtaking another vehicle, the system temporarily turns off.*

The system is operated by the controls mounted on the steering wheel.



A Resume.
B On and off.
C Cancel.
D Set speed decrease.
E Set speed increase.

Switching the System On and Off

Press switch **B**. The information display will prompt you to set a speed.

Setting the Speed Limiter

Use the cruise control switches to adjust the maximum speed setting.

Press switch **E** or **D** to select your desired speed limit. The set speed is stored and displayed in the information display.

Press switch **C** to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The information display will confirm the system is in standby mode by displaying the set speed limit as crossed out.

Press switch **A** again to resume the limiter. The information display will confirm this has been turned on by showing the set speed again.

Intentionally Exceeding the Speed Limiter Set Speed

Depress the accelerator fully to temporarily turn the system off. The speed limiter set speed resumes when your vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit.

System Warnings

If you unintentionally exceed the set speed, a warning will flash in the information display and a warning chime will sound.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning will flash in the information display.

DRIVER ALERT (If Equipped)

Principle of Operation

WARNINGS

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

WARNINGS


At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.


If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.


Take regular rest breaks as required and do not wait for the system to warn you if you feel tired.


Take rest breaks only where it is safe to do so.


Certain driving styles and behavior may result in the system issuing a warning even if you are not feeling tired.


In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all influence the sensor.


The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.


The system may not operate in areas during roadwork construction.


The system may not operate on roads with sharp bends or narrow lanes.


Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.


If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.

Note: *Keep the windshield free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.*

Note: *The system assists you when driving on fast main roads and freeways.*

Note: *The system calculates an alertness level at vehicle speeds above approximately 65 km/h.*

The system automatically monitors your driving behavior.

The system is designed to alert you if it detects that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

Using Driver Alert

Switching the System On and Off

Note: *The system will remain on or off depending on how it was last set.*

Switch the system on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

The system will calculate your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors.

System Warnings

Note: *The system will not issue warnings below approximately 65 km/h.*

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it will issue a further warning. This will remain in the information display until you cancel it. See **Information Messages** (page 73).

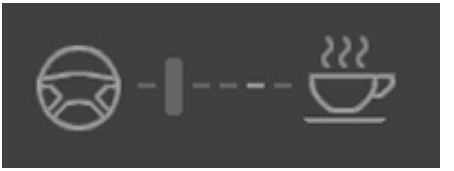
Press **OK** on the steering wheel control to remove the warning.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

System Display

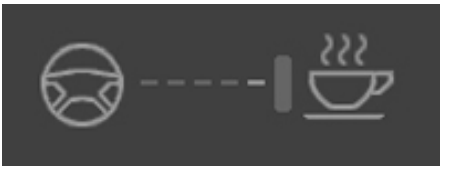
When active the system will run automatically in the background and only issue warnings if required. You can view the status at any time using the information display. See **General Information** (page 66).

The alertness level is shown by six steps as a colored bar.



E131358

Alertness level is fine, no rest required.



E131359

Alertness level is critical, indicating that you should take a rest as soon as it is safe to do so.

The status bar will travel from left to right as the calculated alertness level decreases. As the rest icon is approached the color turns from green to yellow and then finally red when a rest break must be taken.

- Green: No rest required.
- Yellow: First (temporary) warning.
- Red: Second warning.

Your alertness level will be shown in grey if:

- the camera sensor cannot track the road lane markings
- your vehicle speed drops below approximately 65 km/h.

Resetting the System

You can reset the system by:

- switching the ignition off and on
- stopping your vehicle and then opening and closing the driver's door.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.

If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray can all limit sensor performance.

Large contrasts in lighting can limit sensor performance.

The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

The vehicle should be taken to an authorized dealer for inspection if damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Note: *The system is activated at speeds above 64 km/h.*

Note: *The system works as long as the camera can detect one lane marking.*

Note: *The system may not function if the camera is blocked or there is damage to the windshield.*

Note: *When Aid mode is on and the system detects no steering activity for a short period, the system will alert you to put your hands on the steering wheel. The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands off driving.*

The system notifies you to stay in your lane through the steering system and the instrument cluster display when the front camera detects an unintentional drift out of your lane is likely to occur. The system automatically detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior rear view mirror.

Switching the System On and Off

Note: *The system on or off setting is stored until it is manually changed, unless a MyKey is detected. If the system detects a MyKey it defaults to on and the mode is set to Alert.*

Note: *If a MyKey is detected, pressing the button will not affect the on or off status of the system.*

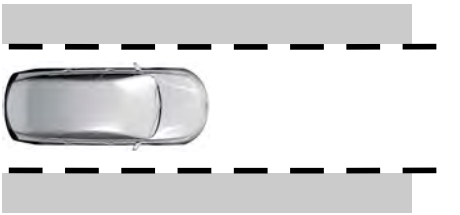


Press the button located on the left steering wheel stalk to switch the system on or off.

System Settings

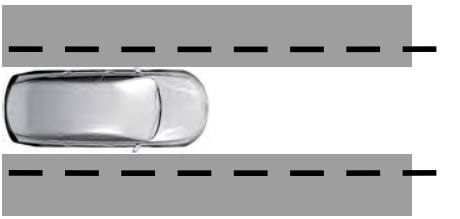
The system has optional setting menus available. To view or adjust the settings, See **General Information** (page 66). The system stores the last-known selection for each of these settings. You do not need to readjust your settings each time you turn on the system.

Mode: This setting allows you to select which of the system features you can enable.



E165515

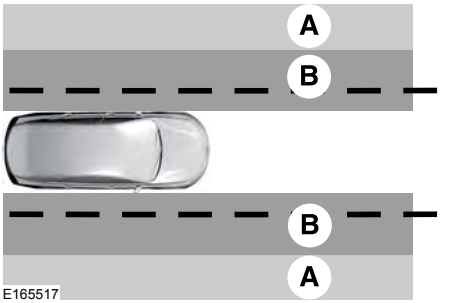
Alert only – Provides a steering wheel vibration when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



E165516

Aid only – Provides an assistance steering torque input toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing



A Alert.

B Aid.

Alert + Aid – Provides an assistance steering torque input toward the lane center. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the system provides a steering wheel vibration.

Note: *The alert and aid diagrams illustrate general zone coverage. They do not provide exact zone parameters.*

Intensity: This setting affects the intensity of the steering wheel vibration used for the alert and alert + aid modes. This setting does not affect the aid mode.

- Low.
- Normal.
- High.

System Display


E151660

When you switch on the system, an overhead graphic of a vehicle with lane markings will display in the information display. If you select aid mode when you switch on the system, a separate white icon will also appear or in some vehicles arrows will display with the lane markings.

When you switch off the system, the lane marking graphics will not display.

While the system is on, the color of the lane markings will change to indicate the system status.

Gray: Indicates that the system is temporarily unable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side(s). This may be because:

- Your vehicle is under the activation speed.
- The turn indicator is active.
- Your vehicle is in a dynamic maneuver.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

- The road has no or poor lane markings in the camera field-of-view.
- The camera is obscured or unable to detect the lane markings due to environmental conditions (significant sun angles, shadows, snow, heavy rain or fog), traffic conditions (following a large vehicle that is blocking or shadowing the lane), or vehicle conditions (poor headlamp illumination).

See **Troubleshooting** for additional information.

Green: Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention, on the indicated side(s).

Yellow: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.

Red: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

The system can be temporarily suppressed at any time by the following:

- Quick braking.
- Fast acceleration.
- Using the turn signal indicator.
- Evasive steering maneuver.

Troubleshooting

Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
Vehicle speed is outside the operational range of the feature
Sun is shining directly into the camera lens
Quick intentional lane change
Staying too close to the lane marking
Driving at high speeds in curves
The last Alert warning or Aid intervention occurred a short time ago
Ambiguous lane markings (mainly in construction zones)
Rapid transition from light to dark or vice versa
Sudden offset in lane markings
ABS or activation
Camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield
Driving too close to the vehicle in front of you
Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings or vice versa
Standing water on the road
Faint lane markings (partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads)

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

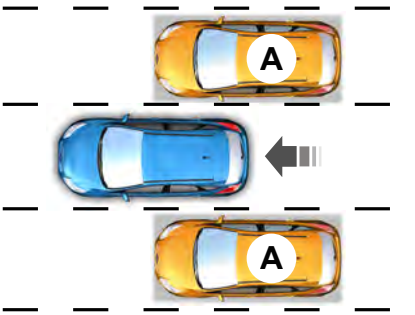
Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
Lane width too narrow or too wide
Camera not calibrated after a windshield replacement
Driving on tight roads or on uneven roads

Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid or Aid + Alert mode?
High cross winds
Large road crown
Rough roads, grooves, shoulder drop-offs
Heavy uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure
If the tires have been exchanged (including snow tires), or the suspension has been modified

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

WARNING

Never use the Blind Spot Information System as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The Blind Spot Information System is not a replacement for careful driving.



E124788

The Blind Spot Information System is designed to aid you in detecting vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone (A). The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m beyond the bumper. The system is designed to alert you if certain vehicles enter the blind spot zone while driving.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Note: *The Blind Spot Information System does not prevent contact with other vehicles or objects; nor detect parked vehicles, people, animals or infrastructure (fences, guardrails, trees). It is only designed to alert you to vehicles in the blind spot zones.*

Note: *When a vehicle passes quickly through the blind spot zone, typically fewer than two seconds, the system does not trigger.*

Using the System

The Blind Spot Information System turns on when you start the engine and you drive your vehicle forward above 8 km/h.

For automatic transmissions, the Blind Spot Information System remains on while the transmission is in drive (D). If shifted into reverse (R) or park (P) the Blind Spot Information System turns off. Once shifted back into drive (D), the Blind Spot Information System turns back on when you drive your vehicle above 8 km/h.

For manual transmissions, the Blind Spot Information System is on for all gears except the reverse (R).

Note: *The Blind Spot Information System does not function in reverse (R) or park (P).*

System Lights and Messages



E142442

The Blind Spot Information System illuminates an amber alert indicator in the outside mirror on the side of your vehicle the approaching vehicle is coming from. When the system alert flashes and you switch on the corresponding direction indicator, the alert indicator flashes at an increased warning level.

The alert indicator dims when the system detects nighttime darkness.

Note: *The alert indicator flashes in case of an alert and the direction indicator is set to that side at the same time.*

System Sensor Blockage

Note: *The system may be temporarily disabled if the trailer tow connector sustains water damage or malfunctions due to the accumulation of mud, dirt or snow.*



E205199

The system uses radar sensors that are located behind the bumper fascia on each side of your vehicle. Any dirt, mud and snow in front of the sensors or driving in heavy rain can cause system degradation. Also, other types of obstructions in front of the sensor can cause system degradation. This is referred to as a 'blocked' condition.

Note: *Do not apply bumper stickers or repair compound to these areas, this can cause degraded system performance.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

If the system detects a degraded performance condition, a message warning of a blocked sensor appears in the information display. Also, the alert indicators remain on and the system no longer provides vehicle warnings. You can clear the information display warning, but the alert indicators remain illuminated.

There are two ways to clear a blocked condition:

- After you remove the blockage in front of the sensors or the rainfall or snowfall rate decreases or stops, drive for a few minutes in traffic to allow the sensors to detect passing vehicles.
- By switching the ignition from ON to OFF and then back ON.

Note: *If your vehicle has a tow bar with a factory equipped trailer tow module and it is towing a trailer, the sensors automatically turn the Blind Spot Information System off. If your vehicle has a tow bar but no factory equipped trailer tow module, it is recommended to turn the Blind Spot Information System off manually. Operating the Blind Spot Information System with a trailer attached causes poor system performance.*

System Errors

If the system senses a problem with the left or right sensor, the telltale illuminates and a message appears in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 73).

Switching the System Off and On

You can temporarily switch the Blind Spot Information System off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 66). When the Blind Spot Information System switches off, you will not receive alerts and the information display shows a system off message. The telltale in the cluster also illuminates. When you switch the Blind Spot Information System on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: *The Blind Spot Information System remembers the last selected on or off setting.*

You can also have a qualified technician permanently switch off the Blind Spot Information System. Once switched off permanently, you can only have a qualified technician switch the system back on.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

WARNING

Never use the Cross Traffic Alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors and looking over your shoulder before backing out of a parking space. Cross Traffic Alert is not a replacement for careful driving.

Cross Traffic Alert is designed to warn you of vehicles approaching from the sides when the transmission is in reverse (R).

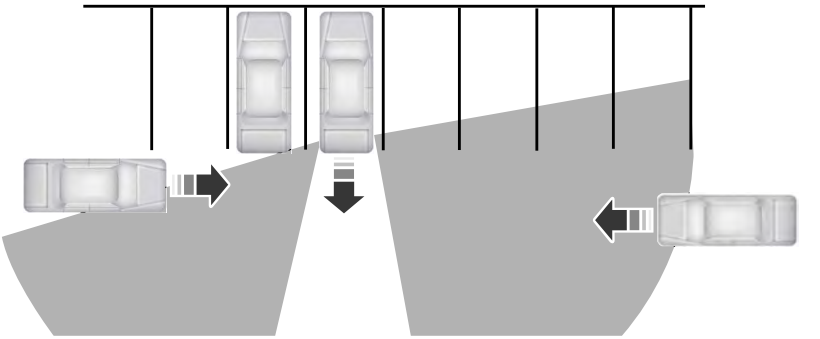
Using the System

Cross Traffic Alert turns on when you start the engine and you shift into reverse (R). Once shifted out of reverse (R), Cross Traffic Alert turns off.

Note: *Cross Traffic Alert only functions while your transmission is in reverse (R).*

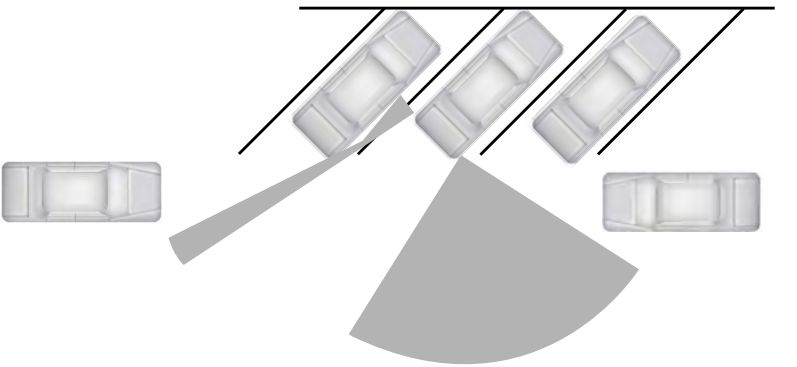
Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Cross Traffic Alert is designed to detect vehicles that approach with a speed up to 60 km/h. Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Reversing slowly helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.



E142440

In this first example, the left sensor is only partially obstructed; zone coverage to the right is nearly maximized.



E142441

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Zone coverage also decreases when parking at shallow angles. Here, the left sensor is mostly obstructed; zone coverage on that side is severely limited.

System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts



E142442

The Cross Traffic Alert illuminates an amber alert indicator in the outside mirror on the side of your vehicle the approaching vehicle is coming from. Cross Traffic Alert also sounds an audible alert and a message appears in the information display indicating a vehicle is coming from the right or left. Cross Traffic Alert works with the reverse sensing system that sounds its own series of tones. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 139).



E205199

The system uses radar sensors that are located behind the bumper fascia on each side of your vehicle. Do not allow mud, snow or bumper stickers to obstruct these areas, this can cause degraded system performance. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 161). If the Blind Spot Information System is blocked, Cross Traffic Alert is also blocked. A corresponding message appears in the information display as soon as you shift the transmission into reverse (R).

System Limitations

Cross Traffic Alert has its limitations; situations such as severe weather conditions or debris build-up on the sensor area may limit vehicle detection.

The following are other situations that may limit the Cross Traffic Alert performance:

- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects obstructing the sensors.
- Approaching vehicles passing at speeds greater than 60 km/h.
- Driving in reverse faster than 12 km/h.
- Backing out of an angled parking spot.

False Alerts

Note: *The system may be temporarily disabled if the trailer tow connector sustains water damage or malfunctions due to the accumulation of mud, dirt or snow.*

Note: *If your vehicle has a tow bar with a factory equipped trailer tow module and it is towing a trailer, the sensors will automatically turn the Cross Traffic Alert off. If your vehicle has a tow bar but no factory equipped trailer tow module, it is recommended to turn the Cross Traffic Alert off manually. Operating Cross Traffic Alert with a trailer attached will cause poor Cross Traffic Alert performance.*

There may be certain instances when there is a false alert by the Cross Traffic Alert system that illuminates the alert indicator with no vehicle in the coverage zone. Some amount of false alerts are normal; they are temporary and self-correct.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

System Errors

If Cross Traffic Alert senses a problem with the left or right sensor a message will appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 73).

Switching the System Off and On

You can temporarily switch Cross Traffic Alert off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 66). When you switch Cross Traffic Alert off, you will not receive alerts and the information display will display a system off message.

Note: *The Cross Traffic Alert switches on whenever the ignition is switched on and ready to provide appropriate alerts when the transmission is in reverse (R). Cross Traffic Alert will not remember the last selected on or off setting.*

You can also have Cross Traffic Alert switched off permanently at an authorized dealer. Once switched off permanently, the system can only be switched back on at an authorized dealer.

STEERING

Electric Power Steering

WARNINGS

The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the ignition off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the ignition on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

WARNINGS

If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Obtain immediate service from an authorized dealer, failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Your vehicle has an electric power steering system. There is no fluid reservoir. No maintenance is required.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving, electric power steering assistance is lost. The steering system still operates and you can steer your vehicle manually. Manually steering your vehicle requires more effort.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort required for you to steer your vehicle. This increased effort prevents overheating and permanent damage to the steering system. You do not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually. Typical steering and driving maneuvers allow the system to cool and return to normal operation.

Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- Correct tire pressures.
- Uneven tire wear.
- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Loose or worn steering components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

Note: *A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander or pull.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Adaptive Learning

The electronic power steering system adaptive learning helps correct road irregularities and improves overall handling and steering feel. It communicates with the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems. Additionally, whenever the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

WARNINGS

This system is an extra driving aid. It does not replace your attention and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. This system does NOT automatically brake your vehicle. If you fail to press the brake pedal when necessary, you may collide with another vehicle.

The Pre-Collision Assist system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

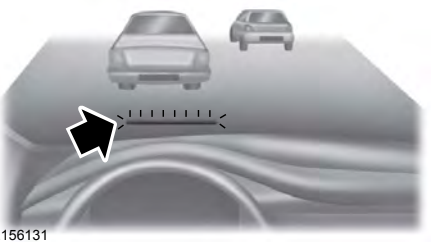
Note: *The system does not detect, warn or respond to potential collisions with vehicles to the rear or sides of your vehicle.*

Note: *The Pre-Collision Assist system is active at speeds above approximately 5 km/h.*



E156130

The system alerts you of certain collision risks. The system's sensor detects your vehicle's rapid approach to other vehicles traveling in the same direction as your vehicle.



E156131

When your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, a red light bar flashes in the windscreen (refer to image), a warning lamp with the words "Pre-collision Assist" is displayed in the instrument cluster and a tone sounds.

The brake support system assists you in reducing any collision speed by pre-charging the brakes. If the risk of collision continues to increase after the audio-visual warning, the brake support prepares the brake system for rapid braking. The system does not automatically activate the brakes, but can provide supplementary braking power if the brake pedal is pressed even lightly.

Using the Pre-Collision Assist System

WARNING

The pre-collision assist system's brake support reduces collision speed only if you brake your vehicle before any collision. You must press your brake pedal as you would in any typical braking situation.

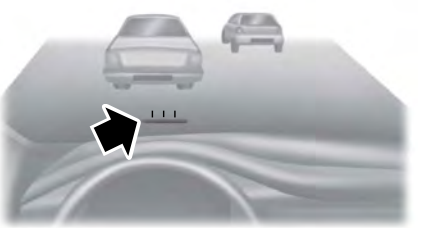
Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Note: *When possible, the manufacturer recommends using the highest sensitivity setting. If warnings are too frequent, you can reduce your system's sensitivity. Reduced sensitivity causes fewer and later system warnings. See* ***General Information*** *(page 66).*

You can adjust the warning system's sensitivity through your information display. See **General Information** (page 66).

Distance Alert

If the system detects that your vehicle is too close to the vehicle in front based on the current sensitivity setting (see Adjusting Pre-Collision Assist Settings section below) the center section of the red light bar in the windscreen will illuminate (refer to image).



E184570

Distance Indication

Distance indication is a function that provides a graphical indication of the time gap to other vehicles traveling in the same direction.



E190004

Note: *Distance Alert and Distance Indication deactivates when adaptive cruise control is active. The distance indication graphics do not display in the information display unless adaptive cruise control is OFF.*

Speed	Sensitivity	Graphics	Distance Gap	Time Gap
100 km/h	Normal	Grey	>25m	>0.9sec
100 km/h	Normal	Yellow	between 17m and 25m	between 0.6sec and 0.9sec
100 km/h	Normal	Red	<17m	<0.6sec

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Adjusting Pre-Collision Assist Settings

You can adjust the Pre-Collision Assist and Distance Alert sensitivity to one of three possible settings by using the information display control. See **General Information** (page 66).

You can switch the distance alert and indication function off using the information display controls. See **General Information** (page 66).

Blocked Sensors



E223376

If a blocked sensor message appears in the information display, dirt, water, or an object is blocking the sensor. The sensor is located behind a cover near the driver side of the lower grille. If anything blocks the sensor, your vehicle cannot see through the sensor, and the pre-collision assist system will not work. Possible causes for the blocked sensor message and corrective actions are listed below.

Cause	Action
The radar sensor cover in the grille is dirty or obstructed	Clean the radar sensor cover or remove the obstruction
The surface of the radar sensor cover is clean but the message remains in the display	Wait a short time. The radar may take several minutes to reset after you remove the obstruction
Heavy rain, spray, snow or fog in the air interferes with the radar signals	The Pre-Collision Assist system is temporarily disabled. Shortly after weather conditions improve, the collision warning system automatically reactivates
Swirling water, snow or ice on the road surface interferes with the radar signals	The Pre-Collision Assist system is temporarily disabled. Shortly after weather conditions improve, the collision warning system automatically reactivates

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

System Limitations

Due to the nature of radar technology, there may be certain instances where vehicles do not provide a collision warning. These include:

- Stationary vehicles or slow moving vehicles.
- Pedestrians or objects in the roadway.
- Oncoming vehicles in the same lane.
- Severe weather conditions (see blocked sensor section).
- Debris build-up on the grille near the headlamps (see blocked sensor section).
- Small distance to vehicle ahead.
- Large steering wheel and pedal movements (very active driving style).

Damage to the front end of your vehicle may alter the radar sensor's coverage area. This may result in missed or false collision warnings. Have an authorized dealer check your radar sensor for proper coverage and operation.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

Use load securing straps to an approved standard, e.g. DIN.

Make sure that you secure all loose items properly.

Place luggage and other loads as low and as far forward as possible within the luggage or loadspace.

Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

WARNINGS

Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight.

Do not place solid objects outside the loadspace area for example timber and sheet material.

Note: *The center of the payload should be located within the wheelbase of the vehicle.*

Note: *Avoid one sided load distribution.*

Note: *Uneven load distribution could result in unacceptable handling and braking characteristics.*

ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

Load Carrying - Roof Loads

Drive Type	17" Wheel	18"Wheel	20"Wheel	With Moonroof (all wheel sizes)
Four-Wheel Drive	100 kg	100 kg	100 kg	80 kg
Rear Wheel Drive	100 kg	100 kg	60 kg	30 kg

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

TOWING A TRAILER

WARNINGS

Do not exceed 100 km/h. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Do not exceed the maximum gross train weight stated on your vehicle identification plate.

Do not exceed the maximum permissible nose weight, e.g. vertical weight on the tow ball. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

Note: *See* ***Recommended Towing Weights*** *(page 173).*

Note: *Vehicles equipped with electronic stability program (ESP) have trailer stability control included.*

When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not exceed 100 km/h even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.
- Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. For best stability of the trailer in an unladen vehicle, place the load in the trailer towards the nose within the maximum nose load as this gives the best stability. See **Recommended Towing Weights** (page 173).
- Reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross combination mass by 10% for every additional 1,000 m in high altitude regions above 1,000 m.
- Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

Trailer Tow Module

Note: *Do not connect the trailer patch harness to the vehicle when the trailer is not connected.*

Note: *Make sure that the indicator and brake lamps do not flicker with engine running while using a trailer with low power LED lamps.*

Vehicles with factory fitted tow bar include a trailer plug control module for trailer lighting. Along with trailer plug functionality, it also protects the vehicle's primary electrical circuits and some trailer electrical failures.

You can purchase a trailer tow kit from an authorized dealer for the vehicles without factory fitted tow bar. This enables the tow bar installation.

The kit includes:

- Trailer plug
- Wiring and hardware components
- Trailer plug control module

Note: *Have the trailer tow electrical kit configured by an authorized dealer.*

Connect a trailer patch harness between the trailer and the vehicle to overcome flickering and correct operation of the rear parking aid.

Note: *The trailer patch harness is available with the Ford authorized dealer.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

TRAILER SWAY CONTROL

Note: *The system automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on.*

Note: *Switching off the stability control will turn off the system.*

Note: *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

Note: *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

Trailer sway control is an enhanced feature of stability control system and automatically detects when an attached trailer starts to sway. This feature applies your vehicle brakes at individual wheels and if necessary, reduces engine power. If the trailer begins to sway, slow your vehicle down, pull safely to the side of the road and check for correct load distribution. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 172).

Note: *Shifting to 4x4 Low will deactivate trailer sway control.*

Note: *Switching on the electronic locking differential will turn off the system.*

Note: *To switch off the trailer sway control as required, See **Stability Control** (page 135).*

RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

Towing capacities

Variant	Drive	Transmission	Without Trailer Brake	With Trailer Brake	Max. Gross Combination Mass
3.2L Diesel	4X2	Auto	750 kg	3,000 kg	5,700 kg
	4WD	Auto	750 kg	3,000 kg	5,800 kg

Trailer Nose Weight

WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible nose weight, e.g. vertical weight on the tow ball. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Variant	Minimum Nose Weight	Maximum Nose Weight
All models	10% of the towed weight	300 kg

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

Follow these guidelines for safe towing:

- Do not tow a trailer until you drive your vehicle at least 1,600 km
- Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.
- See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.
- Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer. See your scheduled maintenance information.
- If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

You can find information on load specification terms found on the tire label and Safety Compliance label as well as instructions on calculating your vehicle's load in the Load Carrying chapter. See **Recommended Towing Weights** (page 173).

Remember to account for the trailer nose weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

Hitches

Do not use a hitch that either clamps onto the bumper or attaches to the axle.

Distribute the trailer load so that 10-15% of the total trailer weight is on the tongue.

Weight-distributing Hitches

WARNING

Do not adjust a weight-distributing hitch to any position where the rear bumper of the vehicle is higher than it was before attaching the trailer. Doing so will defeat the function of the weight-distributing hitch, which may cause unpredictable handling, and could result in serious personal injury.

When hooking-up a trailer using a weight-distributing hitch, always use the following procedure:

1. Park the loaded vehicle, without the trailer, on a level surface.
2. Measure the height to the top of your vehicle's front wheel opening on the fender. This is H1.
3. Attach the loaded trailer to your vehicle without the weight-distributing bars connected.
4. Measure the height to the top of your vehicle's front wheel opening on the fender a second time. This is H2.
5. Install and adjust the tension in the weight-distributing bars so that the height of your vehicle's front wheel opening on the fender is approximately half the way down from H2, toward H1.
6. Check that the trailer is level or slightly nose down toward your vehicle. If not, adjust the ball height accordingly and repeat Steps 2-6.

When the trailer is level or slightly nose down toward the vehicle:

- Lock the bar tension adjuster in place.
- Check that the trailer tongue securely attaches and locks onto the hitch.
- Install safety chains, lighting, and trailer brake controls as required by law or the trailer manufacturer.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Safety Chains

Note: *Never attach safety chains to the bumper.*

Always connect the safety chains to the hook retainers of your vehicle hitch.

To connect the trailer's safety chains, cross them under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

WARNING

Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them properly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations.

The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.

Separate functioning brake systems are required for safe control of towed vehicles and trailers weighing more than 680 kg **when loaded.**

Trailer Lamps

WARNING

Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working.

Before Towing a Trailer

Practice turning, stopping and backing up to get the feel of your vehicle-trailer combination before starting on a trip. When turning, make wider turns so the trailer wheels clear curbs and other obstacles.

When Towing a Trailer

Note: *Only use the trailer hitch anti-rattle bolt when NOT towing a trailer.*

- Do not drive faster than 100 km/h during the first 800 km.
- Do not make full-throttle starts.
- Check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have traveled 80 km.
- When stopped in congested or heavy traffic during hot weather, place the gearshift in position park (P) to aid engine and transmission cooling and to help A/C performance.
- Turn off the speed control with heavy loads or in hilly terrain. The speed control may turn off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

- Shift to a lower gear when driving down a long or steep hill. Do not apply the brakes continuously, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- If your transmission is equipped with a Grade Assist or Tow/Haul feature, use this feature when towing. This provides engine braking and helps eliminate excessive transmission shifting for optimum fuel economy and transmission cooling.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached. Anticipate stops and brake gradually.
- Avoid parking on a grade. However, if you must park on a grade:

1. Turn the steering wheel to point your vehicle tires away from traffic flow.
2. Set your vehicle parking brake.
3. Place the automatic transmission in position park (P).
4. Place wheel chocks in front and back of the trailer wheels. (Chocks not included with vehicle.)

Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC)

Note: *Disconnect the wiring to the trailer* ***before*** *backing the trailer into the water.*

Note: *Reconnect the wiring to the trailer* ***after*** *removing the trailer from the water.*

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 15 cm above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- Causing internal damage to the components.
- Affecting driveability, emissions, and reliability.

Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime the rear axle has been submerged in water. Water may have contaminated the rear axle lubricant, which is not normally checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or other axle repair is required.

TOW BALL

WARNINGS

Never leave the detached tow ball assembly unsecured inside the vehicle. This would increase the risk of injury in an accident.

When not in use, remove the tow ball assembly from the vehicle.

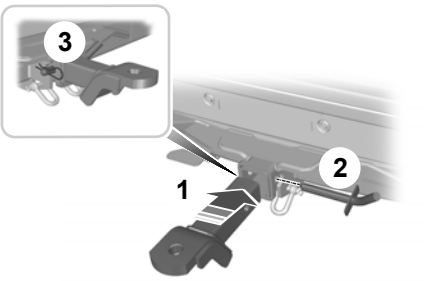
Take special care when fitting the tow ball assembly as the safety of the vehicle and the trailer depends on this.

Do not modify the trailer coupling.

Do not disassemble, repair or modify the tow ball assembly.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Tow Ball Hitch Assembly



E207959

1. Insert the tow ball assembly into the hitch box.
2. Insert the hitch pin.
3. Secure the hitch pin in place with the R-clip.

Driving with a trailer

WARNINGS

If any of the following conditions can not be met, do not use the tow bar and have it inspected by properly trained technicians.

To avoid risk of injury, never remove the tow ball assembly with the trailer attached.

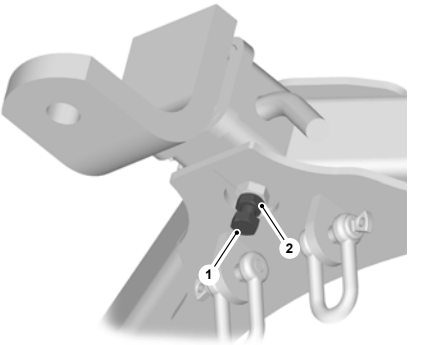
Before starting your journey

- Depending on the tow ball assembly (Type 1, 2 or 3) confirm that it is correctly engaged and locked in place.
- Install the plug into its seat.

WARNING

Tow coupling anti-rattle pinch bolt (where fitted) should be removed from towbar when towing. When not towing, the anti-rattle pinch bolt should be replaced, and lock nut tightened. Tightening torque must not exceed 47 Nm.

Anti-rattle pinch bolt removal



E208167

Remove the tow coupling anti-rattle pinch bolt (1) by loosening the pinch bolt lock nut (2).

Driving without a trailer

1. Remove the tow ball assembly from the vehicle.

Maintenance

Keep the system clean.

Periodically lubricate the tow ball mechanism with resin-free grease or oil.

Lubricate any tow ball assembly locking mechanisms with graphite.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

All Vehicles

WARNINGS

Switch the ignition on when towing the vehicle.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

WARNINGS


The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and allow for increased stopping distances and heavier steering.


Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.


Do not use a rigid tow bar on the front towing eye.


When towing a 2WD vehicle you must select neutral.


Do not tow the vehicle with all wheels on the ground while in AWD mode. Tow your vehicle with all wheels off the ground or all wheels on the ground while the vehicle is in 2WD mode in an event of a breakdown or mechanical failure of the transmission.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

Vehicles With Automatic Transmission

WARNINGS


If a speed of 20 km/h and a distance of 20 km is to be exceeded the drive wheels must be lifted clear of the ground.


It is recommended not to tow with the drive wheels on the ground. However, if it is required to move your vehicle from a dangerous location, do not tow your vehicle faster than 20 km/h or further than 20 km.


Do not tow your vehicle backward.


In the event of a mechanical failure of the transmission the drive wheels must be lifted clear of the ground.

WARNINGS


Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 0ºC.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

BREAKING-IN

Tires

WARNING

New tires need to be run-in for approximately 500 km. During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

WARNING

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 160 km in town and for the first 1,600 km on freeways.

Engine

WARNING

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1,600 km. Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labour the engine.

Vehicles With a Diesel Engine

During the first 3,200 km, you may notice a ticking sound when your vehicle slows down. This is due to adjustments of your new diesel engine and is normal.

REDUCED ENGINE PERFORMANCE

WARNING

Continued operation of an overheating engine will increase the temperature further, and cause the engine to shut down completely.

Drive the overheating engine only for a brief amount of time to prevent permanent damage. The engine will continue to operate with limited power. The distance you can travel depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load, and terrain.

If the needle in the engine coolant temperature gauge moves to the upper limit position, the engine is overheating. See **Gauges** (page 58).

If the engine temperature continues to rise, the fuel supply to the engine will reduce. The air conditioning will also turn off and the engine cooling fan will operate.

When this happens, immediately:

- Stop your vehicle as soon as possible.
- Turn off the engine to prevent severe engine damage.
- Wait for the engine to cool down.
- Check the coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 209).
- Have the vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

OFF-ROAD DRIVING (If Equipped)

Note: *Off-road driving can be extremely dangerous and carries inherent risks that may not be preventable even with the best precautions. Ford strongly recommends driving within your ability and taking every safety precaution.*

In addition to providing an excellent on-road driving experience, your vehicle also excels at all types of off-road driving. The vehicle has been designed and equipped to allow you to explore those places where the road doesn't take you, whether it's a forest trail or the open desert. Before going off road driving,

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

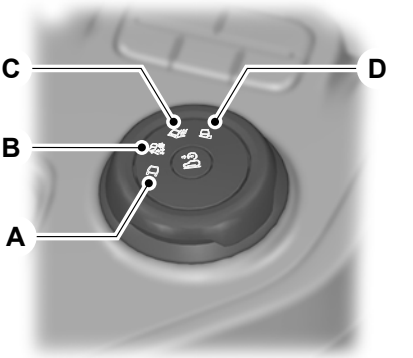
consult with your local governmental agencies to determine designated off-road trails and recreation areas. Also, be sure to understand any off-road vehicle registration requirements for the area in which you plan on driving.

Before taking your vehicle off-road driving, a basic vehicle inspection should be done to make sure that the vehicle is in top working condition.

It is always recommended that at least two vehicles are used while off road driving. Using two vehicles in "buddy" system helps make sure that help is close at hand should a vehicle become stuck or damaged. It is also wise to take supplies such as a first aid kit, a supply of water, a tow strap and a cell or satellite phone with you any time an off-road excursion is planned.

Terrain Management System (TMS)

Your vehicle is equipped with a Terrain Management System that allows the driver to enhance the off-road performance of the vehicle, by selecting the mode best suited to the terrain and driving conditions. Each mode changes a number of the vehicle parameters within the engine, transmission, traction control and Four-Wheel Drive systems.



E206127

A **Normal mode** - This mode is for on-road conditions and should be used on surfaces which are similar to hard road surfaces, or once the need for any of the off-road modes has passed.

B **Mud/Snow** – This mode should be used where a firm surface is covered with loose or slippery material. This includes gravel, shallow mud, wet grass or snow covered road.

C **Sand** - This mode should be used for crossing deep sand or deep sticky mud.

D **Rock** - This mode gives low speed controllability for crawling over rocks. Low range must be selected before this mode is activated. See **Using Four-Wheel Drive** (page 129).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

High and Low Range Usage

	Normal	Mud/ Snow	Sand	Rock
High Range (H)	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Low Range (L)	Yes	-	-	Yes

Low range can be selected by pressing the 4X4 LOW switch in the centre console.

Note: *If an entry condition for any mode is not met, the information display screen will display the appropriate messages to guide the driver through the proper operating procedures.*

Note: *Operating the vehicle in any of the off-road modes does not guarantee that the vehicle will not become stuck in sand, snow or mud or other debris. It is the driver's responsibility to assess off-road situations and determine if the terrain is passable.*

Off-Road Driving Aids

- ELD (electronic locking differential) See **Electronic Locking Differential** (page 130).

Note: *The locking and unlocking speeds may be different in different TMS modes.*

- HDC (hill descent control)

Off-road Screen

The real-time status of your vehicles off-road systems can be continuously monitored using the first off-road screen found in the information displays screen. For more information, See **General Information** (page 66).

Basic Off-road Driving Techniques

- Grip the steering wheel with your thumbs on the outside of the rim. This will reduce the risk of injury due to abrupt steering wheel motions that occur when negotiating rough terrain. Do not grip the steering wheel with your thumbs inside the rim.
- Throttle, brake and steering inputs should be made in a smooth and controlled manner. Sudden inputs to the controls can cause loss of traction or upset the vehicle, especially while on sloped terrain or while crossing obstacles such as rocks or logs.
- Look ahead on your route noting upcoming obstacles, surface texture or color changes or any other factors which may indicate a change in available traction, and adjust the vehicle speed and route accordingly. During pre-run, mark obstacles with GPS markers to make sure appropriate speeds are used to avoid potential vehicle damage.
- When driving off-road, if the front or rear suspension is bottoming-out and/or excessive contact with the skid-plates is encountered, reduce vehicle speed to avoid potential damage to the vehicle.
- When running with other vehicles, it is recommended that communication is used and the lead vehicle notify other vehicles of obstacles that could cause potential vehicle damage.
- Always keep available ground clearance in mind and pick a route that minimizes the risk of catching the underside of the vehicle on an obstacle.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

- When negotiating low speed obstacles, applying light brake pressure in conjunction with the throttle will help prevent the vehicle from jerking and will allow you to negotiate the obstacle in a more controlled manner. Using 4x4 Low will also help with this.
- Use and equip your vehicle with supplemental safety equipment as discussed later in this chapter.
- Please consult your local off-road group for other helpful tips.
- off road driving requires a high degree of concentration. Even if your local law does not prohibit alcohol use while driving off-road, Ford strongly recommends against drinking if you plan to off-road.

Driving in Mud

- Deep mud should be approached with caution especially if you are driving in an unfamiliar area.
- If possible, test the depth of a mud hole before entering with the vehicle.
- Keep in mind that obstacles and deep ruts may be hidden beneath the surface of the mud.
- Proceed in a steady, controlled manner through deep mud while maintaining momentum.
- If momentum is lost and you feel the vehicle becoming stuck, turning the steering wheel back and forth (sawing the wheel) a quarter turn in each direction may give the vehicle the traction needed to clear the muddy area.
- In higher speed areas with shallow mud, directional control will be reduced in the muddy area much like on snow or ice. When approaching such an area, be sure to slow to a speed which allows you to maneuver as required by the conditions.

Driving in Sand

WARNING

Always re-inflate tires to recommended tire pressures before the vehicle is operated on-road. The recommended pressure is located on the tire label or safety certification label, located on the B-pillar, inside the driver's door.

Soft sand and dunes present a very unique driving challenge. Before going on such a drive, some research is advised regarding proven techniques and pitfalls inherent in driving in deep sand.

Some general points to consider:

- It is very difficult and in many cases impossible to navigate deep sand with tire pressures which are appropriate for on-road driving. If you decide to air down your tires, be advised that the tire pressure monitoring light will illuminate. The tires must be returned to normal recommended tire pressures before driving on pavement or hard surfaces.
- Lower tire pressures are more likely to cause a debeading of the tire during cornering. Avoid sharp or abrupt turns when you have extremely low tire pressures.
- To help prevent becoming stuck in deep sand, avoid spinning the tires or making abrupt maneuvers. Proceed in a controlled manner while maintaining vehicle momentum.
- Avoid stopping or parking on inclines as this makes it more difficult to resume driving while in sand.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Driving in Deep Snow

- Maintain vehicle momentum.
- Apply the throttle very gently to avoid spinning the tires. Spinning the tires will potentially dig the vehicle deeper into the snow.
- Drive in a controlled manner, avoiding aggressive steering wheel movements, and keep braking to a minimum.
- Extremely deep snow may cause the undercarriage of the vehicle to become stuck. Test the depth of the snow before trying to drive through or over it.

Crossing Obstacles

- Review the path ahead before attempting to cross any obstacle. It is best if the obstacle is reviewed from outside the vehicle so that there is a good understanding of terrain condition both in, front of, and behind the obstacle.
- Approach obstacles slowly and slowly inch the vehicle over.
- If a large obstacle such as a rock cannot be avoided, choose a path that places the rock directly under the tire rather than the undercarriage of the vehicle. This will help prevent damage to the vehicle.
- Ditches and washouts should be crossed at a 45 degree angle, allowing each wheel to independently cross the obstacle.

Hill Climbing

WARNING

Extreme care should be used when steering the vehicle in reverse down a slope so as not to cause the vehicle to swerve out of control.

- Always attempt to climb a steep hill along the fall line of the slope and not diagonally.
- If the vehicle is unable to make it up the hill, DO NOT attempt to turn back down the slope. Place the vehicle in low range and slowly back down in reverse.
- When descending a steep slope, select low gear and engage hill descent control. Use the throttle and brake pedals to control your descent speed as described earlier in this section using hill descent control. Note that hill descent control is functional in reverse and should be used in this situation.

Water Wading

See **Driving Through Water** (page 184).

After Off-Road Driving

It is important to complete a full vehicle inspection after off-road driving. Some items to check include:

- Make sure that tires are inflated to proper tire pressure as indicated on the tire placard.
- Check the wheels and undercarriage for built up mud or debris which can cause vehicle vibration.
- Make sure that the grille and radiator are clear of any obstructions that may affect cooling.
- Make sure that the brakes are in proper working order and are free of any mud, stones and debris, which can become trapped around the brake rotor, backing plate and caliper.
- Check that the air filter is clean and dry.
- Inspect for torn or punctured boots on ball joints, half shafts and steering gears.
- Inspect the exhaust system for damage or looseness.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

- Inspect the undercarriage fasteners. If any are loose or damaged, tighten or replace ensuring that the proper torque specification is used.
- Inspect the tires for any cuts in the tread or sidewall area. Also inspect the sidewall for any bulge indicating damage to the tire.
- Inspect the wheels for dents, cracks, or other damage.

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -25ºC.

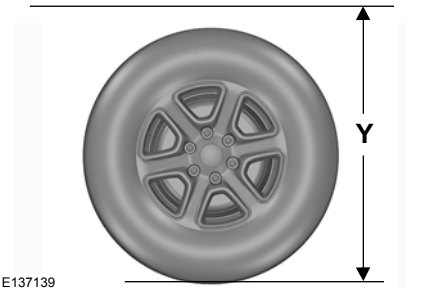
DRIVING THROUGH WATER

WARNINGS

Drive through water in an emergency only and not as part of normal driving.

Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

In an emergency, you can drive your vehicle through water to a maximum depth as shown and at a maximum speed of 7 km/h. You must take extra care when driving through flowing water.



Y 800mm (31.5 inches)

When driving in water, maintain a low speed and do not stop your vehicle. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Depress the brake pedal lightly to check that the brakes are functioning correctly.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that your vehicle's lamps are fully operational.
- Check the power assistance of the steering system.

FLOOR MATS

WARNINGS

Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

WARNINGS

Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to make sure mats do not shift out of position.

Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.

Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.

Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.

Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing a loss of vehicle control.



E142666

To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

HAZARD FLASHERS

Note: *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. If used when the vehicle is not running, the battery loses charge. As a result, there may be insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*



The flasher control is on the instrument panel. Use your hazard flashers when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

- Press the flasher control and all front and rear direction indicators flash.
- Press the button again to switch them off.

FUEL SHUTOFF

WARNING



Failure to inspect and, if necessary, repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

Note: *When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once the vehicle determines the systems are safe, then the vehicle allows you to restart.*

Note: *In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact a qualified technician.*

The fuel pump shutoff stops the flow of fuel to the engine in the event of a moderate to severe crash. Not every impact causes a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a crash, you may restart your vehicle.

If your vehicle is equipped with a key system:

1. Switch off the vehicle.
2. Switch on the vehicle.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to re-enable the fuel pump.

If your vehicle is equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the ***START/STOP*** button to switch off your vehicle.
2. Press the brake pedal and the ***START/STOP*** button to switch on your vehicle.
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the ***START/STOP*** button to switch off your vehicle.
4. You can attempt to start the vehicle by pressing the brake pedal and the ***START/STOP*** button, or press the ***START/STOP*** button without pressing the brake pedal.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

WARNINGS



Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Preparing Your Vehicle

Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle.

Note: *Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.*

Note: *Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.*

Note: *Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle electrical system.*

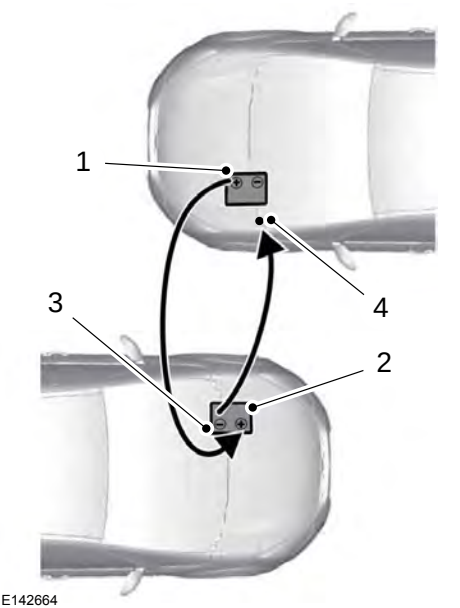
Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

Connecting the Jumper Cables

WARNINGS

Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

Do not use fuel lines, engine valve covers, windshield wiper arms, the intake manifold, or hood latch as ground points.

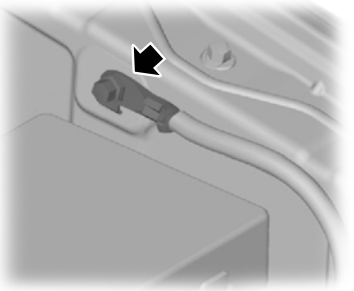


E142664

Note: *In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.*

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) cable to a ground connection point if available.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing



E205764

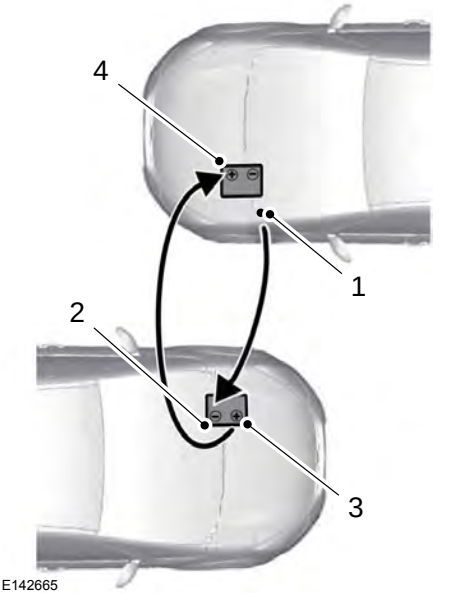
Note: *You can use the optional connection point location shown above to ground your vehicle.*

Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and rev the engine moderately, or press the accelerator gently to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.



E142665

1. Remove the negative (-) jumper cable from the disabled vehicle.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle battery.
5. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

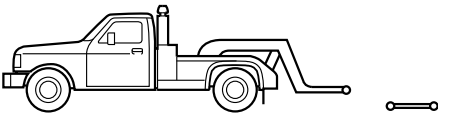
POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

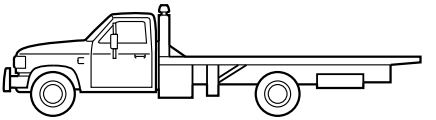
The system flashes the direction indicators and sounds the horn (intermittently) in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the seatbelt pretensioners.

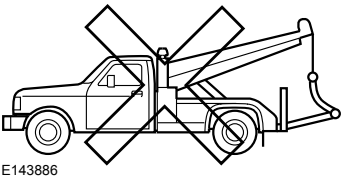
The horn and indicators turn off when:

- You press the hazard control button.
- You press the panic button on the remote entry transmitter (if equipped).
- Your vehicle runs out of power.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE







E143886

If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

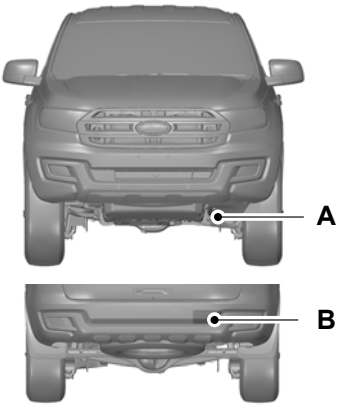
We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company does not approve a slingbelt towing procedure. If you tow your vehicle incorrectly, or by any other means, vehicle damage may occur.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

Towing an four-wheel drive vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground, such as using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission, four-wheel drive system and vehicle.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

TOWING POINTS

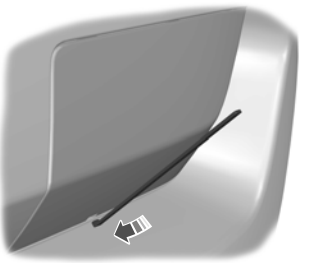


E203454

A Front towing eye.

B Rear towing eye.*

* Remove the cover to access the towing eye.



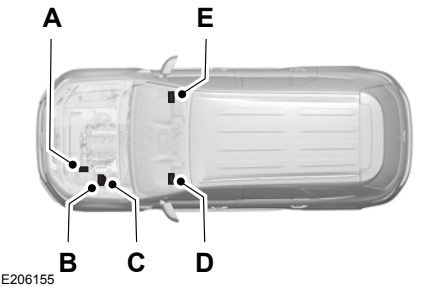
E221577

Use the towing eye cover removal tool (provided in the vehicle tool kit) to carefully remove the towing eye cover by pulling rearward.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS

Fuse Box Locations



E206155

A Pre-fuse box.

B Engine compartment fuse box (Power Distribution Box - PDB).

C High current fuse box (below the PDB).

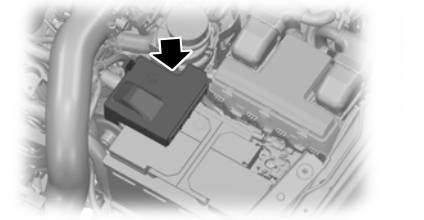
D Passenger compartment fuse box.[1]

E Passenger compartment fuse box.[2]

[1]- Left Hand Drive.

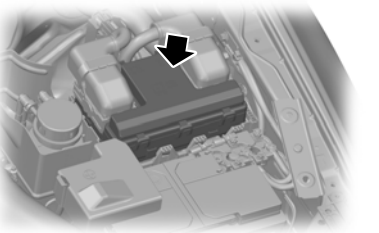
[2]- Right Hand Drive.

Pre-Fuse Box


E206156

Your vehicle has a pre-fuse box located in the engine compartment attached to the positive battery post. This box contains several high current fuses. If replacement of these high current fuses is required, see an authorized dealer.

Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Power Distribution Box - PDB)


E206157

WARNINGS

Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the engine compartment fuse box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

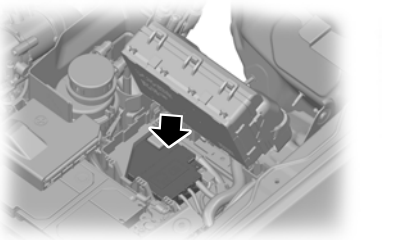
Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

The engine compartment fuse box has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

When you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you will need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 212).

Lift the release lever at the rear of the cover to remove it.

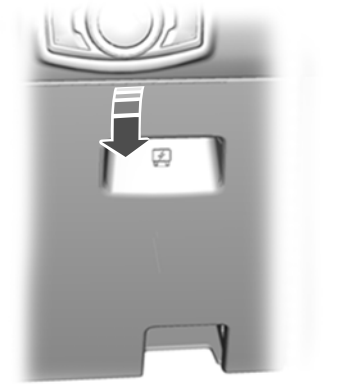
High Current Fuse Box



E206158

Your vehicle has a pre-fuse box located in the engine compartment below the engine compartment fuse box. This box contains several high current fuses. If replacement of these high current fuses is required, see an authorized dealer.

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



E206167

The fuse box is located behind the access cover on the outboard side of the steering column.

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

Engine Compartment Fuse Box

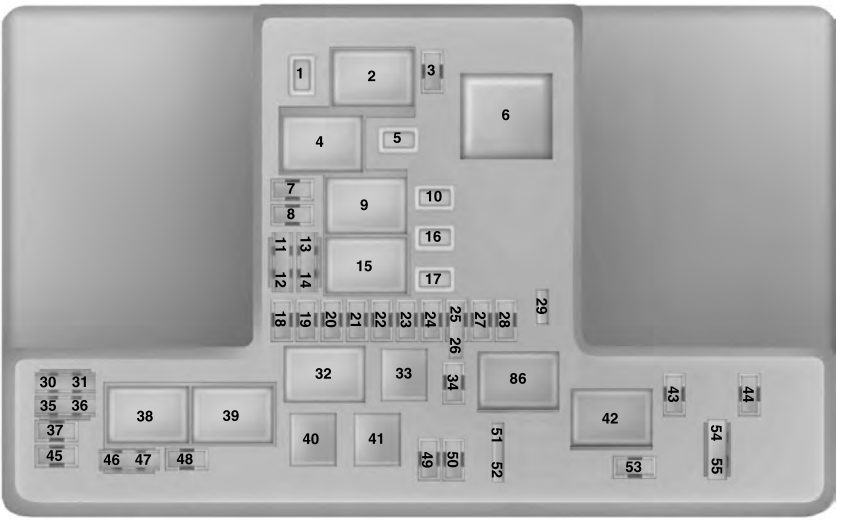
WARNINGS

Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

The engine compartment fuse box has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads. When you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you will need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 212). Lift the release levers at the rear of the cover to remove it.



E190797

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
1	25[3]	Not used.
2	-	Starter motor solenoid relay.
3	15[1]	Rear wiper, rain sensor.
4	-	Front blower motor relay.
5	20[3]	Power point 3 (console rear).
6	-	Headlamp low beam relay (high intensity discharge).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
7	20[1]	Powertrain control module.
8	20[1]	Power train control module - volumetric control valve, EGR cooler bypass, TMAF.
9	-	Powertrain control module relay.
10	20[3]	Power point 1 / cigar lighter.
11	15[2]	Powertrain control module - NOX sensor.
12	15[2]	Powertrain control module - fan drive, glow plug control module.
13	15[2]	Not used.
14	15[2]	Not used.
15	-	Run/start relay.
16	20[3]	Power point 2 / cigar lighter .
17	20[3]	Power point 4 - 3rd row power point .
18	10[1]	Not used.
19	10[1]	Electric power assisted steering.
20	10[1]	Headlamp switch, headlamp levelling motor.
21	15[1]	Transfer case control module - terrain management switch.
22	10[1]	Air conditioning compressor.
23	15[1]	Parking aid rear view camera, blind spot monitoring module, adaptive speed control radar and heads up display (if fitted).
24	5[1]	Exhaust emissions - rear dosing control module.
25	10[2]	Anti-lock brake system.
26	10[2]	Mirror adjust switch.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
27	5[1]	PTC Heater (if fitted).
28	10[1]	Powertrain control module.
29	10[1]	Rear window washer pump.
30	-	Not used.
31	-	Not used.
32	-	Not used.
33	-	Air conditioning clutch relay.
34	-	Not used.
35	15[1]	Transmission control module.
36	-	Not used.
37	10[1]	Heated exterior mirror.
38	-	Not used.
39	-	Not used.
40	-	Fuel pump relay.
41	-	Horn relay.
42	-	Seat third row power fold relay.
43	15[1]	Exhaust emissions - rear dosing control module.
44	25[1]	Headlamp washer pump.
45	-	Not used.
46	10[2]	Not used.
47	10[2]	Brake pedal switch.
48	20[1]	Horn.
49	5[1]	Not used.
50	15[1]	Exhaust emissions - rear dosing control module.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
51	-	Not used.
52	-	Not used.
53	-	Not used.
54	10[2]	Exhaust emissions - rear dosing control module.
55	10[2]	Exhaust emissions - rear dosing control module.
86	-	Rear blower motor relay.

[1]Micro fuse.

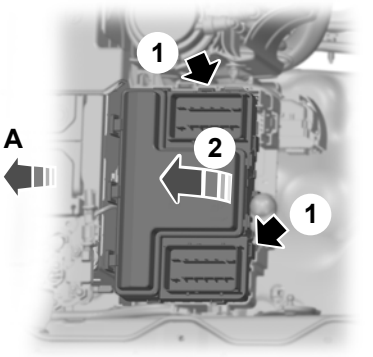
[2]Dual micro fuse.

[3]M-type fuse.

Power Distribution Box - Bottom

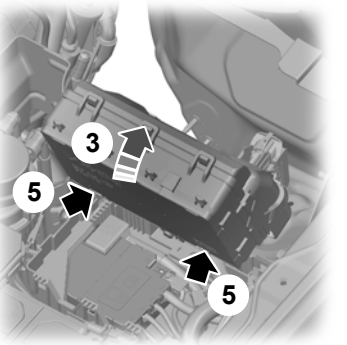
There are fuses located on the bottom of the fuse box. To access the bottom of the fuse box, do the following:

1. Release the two latches, located on both sides of the fuse box.
2. Raise the rear side of the fuse box from the cradle.



E206171

A Towards the front side of the vehicle.

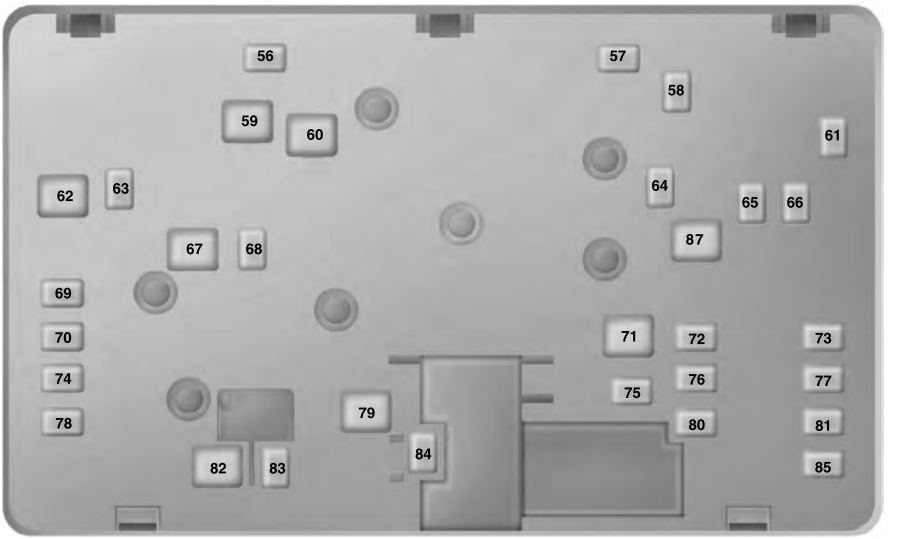


E206174

3. Move the fuse box toward the rear side of the engine compartment and rotate as shown in the graphics.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

4. Pivot the rear side of the fuse box to access the bottom side.
5. Release the two latches to open the fuse cover.



E190798

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
56	30[3]	Fuel pump control module.
57	-	Not used.
58	-	Not used.
59	-	Not used.
60	-	Not used.
61	-	Not used.
62	50[4]	Body control module 1 (lighting).
63	-	Not used.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
64	20[3]	Trailer auxiliary.
65	20[3]	Heated front seats.
66	-	Not used.
67	50[4]	Body control module 2 (lighting).
68	40[3]	Rear window defroster.
69	30[3]	Antilock brake system valves.
70	20[3]	Passenger power seat.
71	-	Not used.
72	30[3]	Third row power fold seat.
73	-	Not used.
74	20[3]	Driver power seat.
75	25[3]	Rear blower motor.
76	20[3]	Left-hand low beam high-intensity discharge headlamps (if fitted).
77	25[3]	4WD module.
78	25[3]	4WD module.
79	40[4]	Blower motor.
80	20[3]	Right-hand low beam high-intensity discharge headlamps (if fitted).
81	40[3]	Inverter.
82	60[4]	Anti-lock brake system pump.
83	25[3]	Windshield wiper motor.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
84	30[3]	Starter motor solenoid.
85	30[3]	Power lift gate module.
87	40[4]	Trailer module.

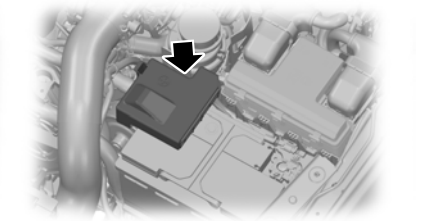
[1]Micro fuse.

[2]Dual micro fuse.

[3]M-type fuse.

[4]LPJ-type fuse.

Battery Mounted Fuse Link

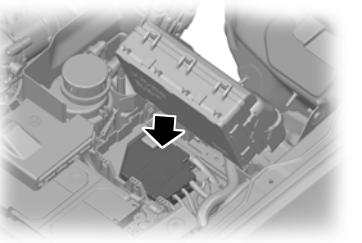


E206156

Fuse	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
1	225	Alternator.
2	125	Electronic power assist steering.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

High Current Fuse Box



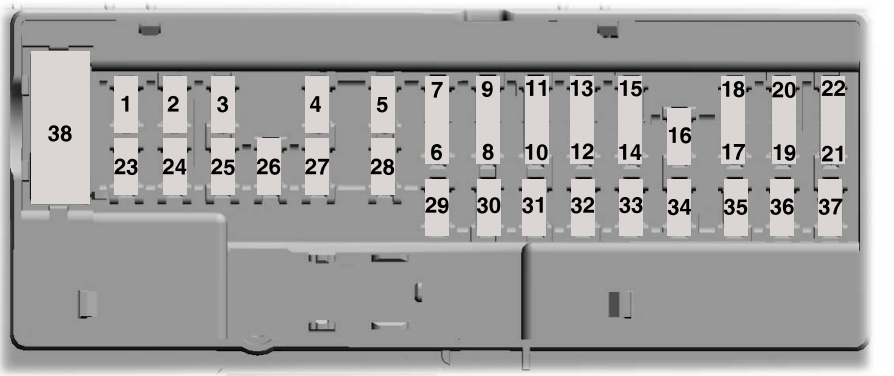
E206158

Fuse	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
1	60	Glow plug module.
2	125	Body control module.
3	50	Body control module.
4	-	Busbar through to power distribution box.
5	100	PTC Heater (if fitted).

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box

The fuse box is located below and outboard of the steering column behind the access cover.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing



E145984

Fuse	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
1	10[1]	Demand lamp / battery saver - overhead console, automatic transmission gear shifter. glove box lamp, sun visor, grab handle, Map lamps.
2	7.5[1]	Not used (spare).
3	20[1]	Driver door latch /fuel flap unlock relay. Door double/ aux lock relay.
4	5[1]	Not used (spare).
5	20[1]	Subwoofer amplifier.
6	10[2]	Not used (spare).
7	10[2]	Not used (spare).
8	10[2]	Security horn.
9	10[2]	Not used (spare).
10	5[2]	Power liftgate module.
11	5[2]	Interior motion sensor.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Fuse	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
12	7.5[2]	Electronic control panel, climate control module, rear auxiliary module.
13	7.5[2]	Instrument cluster, steering column control module, smart data link connector.
14	10[2]	Not used (spare).
15	10[2]	Gateway module/smart data link connector - OBD II (RHD).
16	15[1]	Child lock.
17	5[2]	Battery backed sounder.
18	5[2]	Ignition switch.
19	7.5[2]	Not used (spare).
20	7.5[2]	Headlamp control module (if fitted).
21	5[2]	Humidity and in car temperature sensor.
22	5[2]	Not used (spare).
23	10[1]	Inverter, door lock switch, moon roof, driver door window switch (one touch up/down all doors.
24	20[1]	Central locking system.
25	30[1]	Driver door control module (power window one touch up/down all doors) Driver door power window switch memory (with one touch up/down driver only)
26	30[1]	Passenger door control module (power window - one touch up/down).
27	30[1]	Moonroof.
28	20[1]	Not used (spare).
29	30[1]	Left rear door control module (power window - one touch up/down).
30	30[1]	Right rear door control module (power window - one touch up/down).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Fuse	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
31	15[1]	Not used (spare).
32	10[1]	Radio transceiver module, SYNC, global positioning system module, multi function display, door entry remote.
33	20[1]	Audio unit.
34	30[1]	Run/start relay.
35	5[1]	Restraints control module.
36	15[1]	Interior rear view mirror electrochromatic.
37	15[1]	Not used (spare).
38	30[3]	Power windows (without door control module - with one touch up/down driver only).

[1]Micro fuse.

[2]Dual micro fuse.

[3]PTC fuse

CHANGING A FUSE

Fuses

WARNING

Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

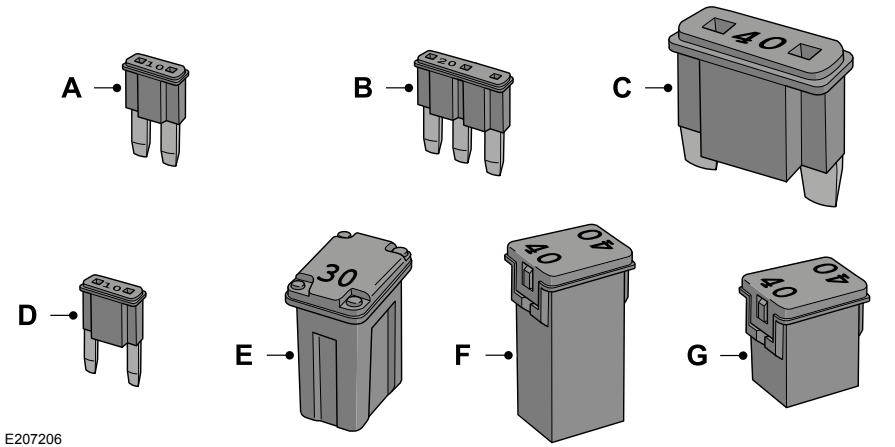


E217331

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Fuse Types



Callout	Fuse Type
A	Micro 2
B	Micro 3
C	Maxi
D	Mini
E	M Case
F	J Case
G	J Case Low Profile

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of Ford authorized repairers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. Authorized repairers are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly, with a wide range of highly specialized tools.

In addition to regular servicing, we recommend that you carry out the following checks.

WARNINGS

Switch the ignition off before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.

Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage.

Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan. Under certain conditions, the fan may continue to run for several minutes after you have switched the engine off.

Make sure that you fit filler caps securely after carrying out maintenance checks.

Daily Checks

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

Check When Refueling

- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).
- Brake fluid level. See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 211).
- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 211).
- Tire pressures (when cold). See **Technical Specifications** (page 239).
- Tire condition. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 224).

Note: *Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.*

Monthly Checks

- Engine coolant level (engine cold). See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 209).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of lug nuts. See **Technical Specifications** (page 239).

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

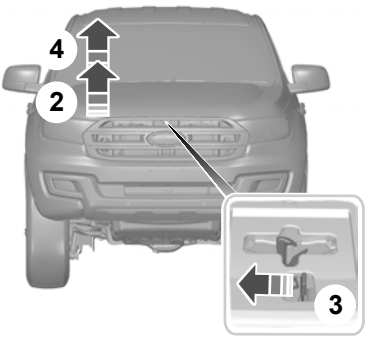
Opening the Hood



E206129

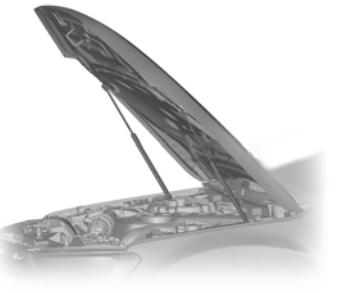
Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

1. Pull the hood release lever.



E207690

2. Slightly lift the hood.
3. Move the catch to the left for vehicles with left hand drive. Move the catch to the right for vehicle with right hand drive.
4. Open the hood.



E201861

5. The hood strut automatically supports the hood.

Closing the Hood

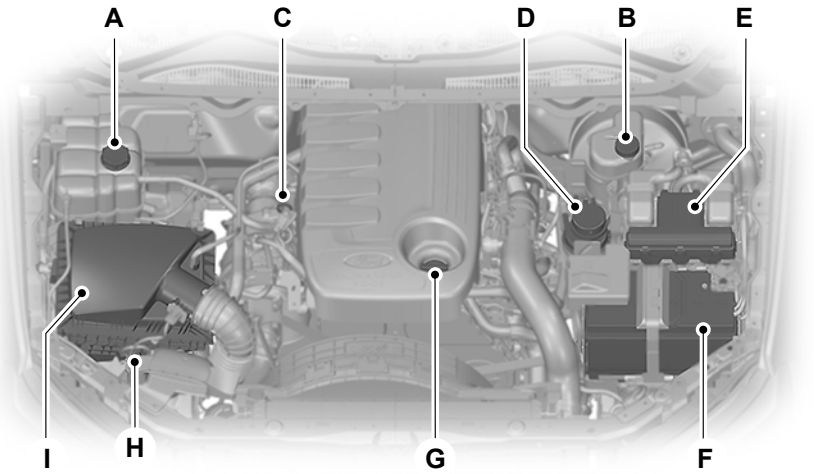
1. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 20–30 cm.
2. If necessary, apply a downward force on the leading edge of the hood prior to engage with the latch, to latch the hood fully.

Note: *Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 3.2L DURATORQ-TDCI (143KW/194PS) - PUMA

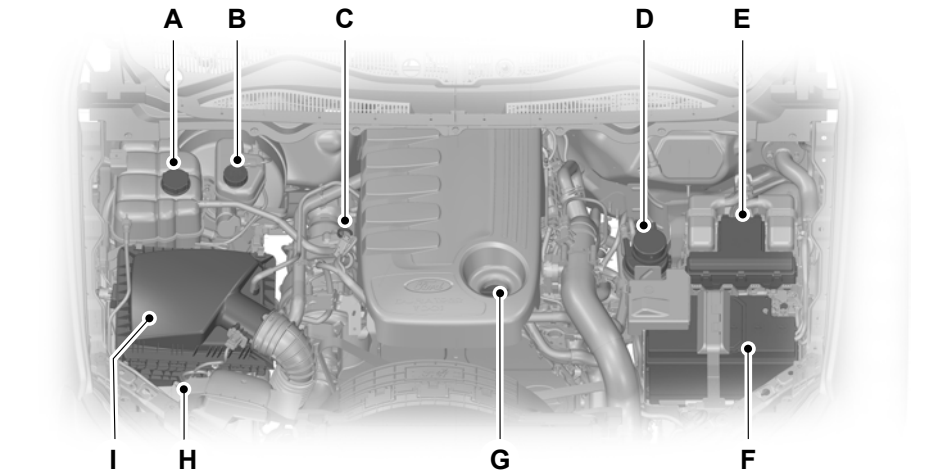
Left Hand Drive



E200935

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Right Hand Drive

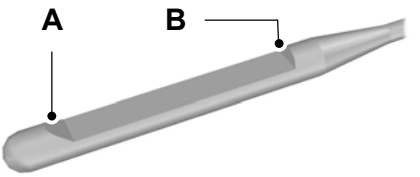


E200848

A Engine coolant reservoir cap. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 209).
B Brake and clutch fluid reservoir cap. See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 211).
C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 209).
D Fuel filter water drain. See **Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap** (page 211).
E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 191).
F Battery. See **Maintenance** (page 212).
G Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).
H Washer fluid reservoir cap. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 211).
I Air Cleaner.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK



E71362

A MIN
B MAX

ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Switch off the engine and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately.

Note: *Check the oil level before starting the engine.*

Note: *Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks.*

Note: *Do not use oil additives or other engine treatments. Under certain conditions, they may damage the engine.*

Note: *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km.*

Adding Oil

WARNINGS

Only add oil when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down. Failure to take care may result in personal injury.

Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running. Failure to take care may result in personal injury.

1. Remove the filler cap.
2. Add oil that meets Ford specifications.
3. Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.*

Note: *Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.*

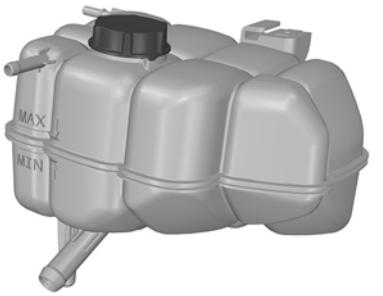
ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

WARNINGS

Do not dispose of engine coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing



E206128

Make sure that the coolant level is between the ***MIN*** and ***MAX*** marks on the coolant reservoir. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add coolant immediately.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -29ºC and -34ºC.

Note: *Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.*

Note: *Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may expand beyond the* ***MAX*** *mark.*

Note: *Do not use Stop Leak Pellets, cooling system sealants or additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems.*

Adding Engine Coolant

WARNINGS

Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

Only add coolant when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.

WARNINGS

Do not allow the coolant to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilled on a hot exhaust.

Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle.

Ford Motor Company does not recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

Note: *Add a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water or prediluted engine coolant that meets the correct specification.*

Note: *Use coolants which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other coolants may lead to damage which is not covered by your vehicle's Warranty.*

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap **SLOWLY**. Any pressure will escape as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add engine coolant to the MAX mark, do not overfill.
3. Refit filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong click.

Note: *In case of emergency, you can add water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.*

Note: *Prolonged use of an incorrect dilution of engine coolant can cause engine damage, such as corrosion, overheating or freezing.*

Note: *The cooling system filler cap should be inspected and cleaned regularly. The cap should be replaced if there is any evidence of deterioration of the sealing.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

BRAKE AND CLUTCH FLUID CHECK

WARNINGS

Use of any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid may reduce brake efficiency and not meet Ford's performance standards.

Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your doctor.

Clean the filler cap before removing. Use only fluid that meets Ford specifications and from a sealed container.

Note: *Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.*

Note: *The brake and the clutch systems are supplied from the same reservoir.*

Note: *Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.*

The fluid level will drop slowly as the brakes wear, and will rise when the brake components are replaced.

Fluid levels between the MIN and MAX lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid.

If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range, the performance of the system could be compromised; seek service from you authorized dealer immediately.

Top up with fluid that meets the Ford specification.

WASHER FLUID CHECK

Note: *The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.*

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing in cold weather and improve the cleaning capability. We recommend that you use only high quality washer fluid.

For information on fluid dilution, refer to the product instructions.

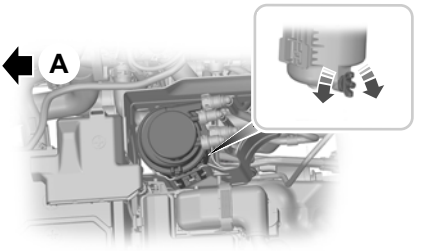
DRAINING THE FUEL FILTER WATER TRAP

WARNING

Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

Note: *Only add fuel that meets the Ford specification. See* ***Fuel Quality*** *(page 117).*

Note: *The in-tank pump will turn off automatically after approximately 40 seconds.*



E208053

A Front of Vehicle.

For item location: See **Under Hood Overview** (page 207).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attach a tube to the drain plug and place the end of the tube into a suitable container.
3. Loosen the drain plug approximately 1.5 turns.
4. Switch the ignition on to activate the in-tank pump.
5. Allow the water to drain.
6. Switch the ignition off.
7. Tighten the drain plug until you feel a strong resistance.
8. Remove the tube from the drain plug.
9. Start the engine.
10. Check for leaks.

Note: *The water-in-fuel indicator lamp will go out after approximately 2 seconds, with the engine running.*

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

WARNINGS

Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

WARNINGS

Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is located in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 207).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If your vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

To maintain correct operation of the battery management system, if you add any electrical devices to your vehicle, do not connect the ground connection directly to the negative battery terminal. A connection at the negative battery terminal can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *Electrical accessories or components added to your vehicle by you or an authorized dealer, may adversely affect battery performance, durability and the performance of other electrical systems on your vehicle.*

If a replacement battery is required, we recommend you use a Ford replacement battery that matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, transmission must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

Remove and Reinstall the Battery

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Disconnect the negative (-) battery cable terminal first.
5. Disconnect the positive (+) battery cable terminal last.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.
8. Install in the reverse order.

Note: *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

Note: *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid un-intended connection or arcing.*

Note: *Make sure the battery cable terminals are fully tightened.*

Note: *If you disconnect or replace the battery, you must reset the clock and the pre-set radio stations once the battery is reconnected.*

Battery Disposal



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E222238

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with isopropyl alcohol or windscreen washer concentrate.

CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

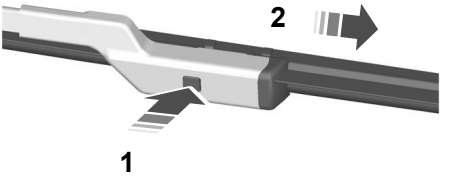
Changing the Windshield Wiper Blades

Note: *The windshield wiper blades are different in length. If you install wiper blades of the wrong length, the wiper blades can clash damaging the wiper system.*



E170913

1. Manually move the wiper arms to the service position.



E72899

2. Press and hold the locking button.
3. Remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

Changing the Rear Window Wiper Blade

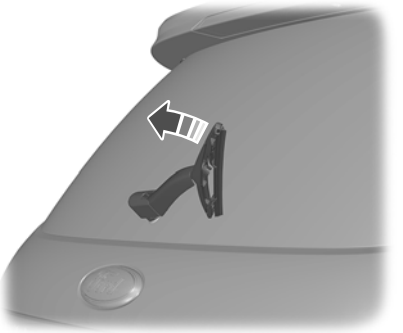


E175222

Note: *The rear wiper arm cannot be lifted up beyond 25–30°. This is to prevent damage during automatic car wash.*

1. Move the wiper arms to the service position manually.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing



E206062

2. Tightly hold the blade assembly at the top and rotate it anti-clockwise till the blade assembly disengages from the wiper arm.



E206063

3. Align the new blade assembly with the wiper arm groove and clip them together.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

Note: *When the rear wiper blade requires replacement, the whole blade assembly has to be replaced.*

REMOVING A HEADLAMP

Contact an authorized dealer.

CHANGING A BULB

Lamp Assembly Condensation

Exterior lamps are vented to accommodate normal changes in pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a thin film of mist can form on the interior of the lens. The thin mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation. Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- Presence of thin mist (no streaks, drip marks or droplets).
- Fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable moisture (usually caused by a lamp water leak) are:

- Water puddle inside the lamp.
- Large water droplets, drip marks or streaks present on the interior of the lens.

Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer for service if any of the above conditions of unacceptable moisture are present.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

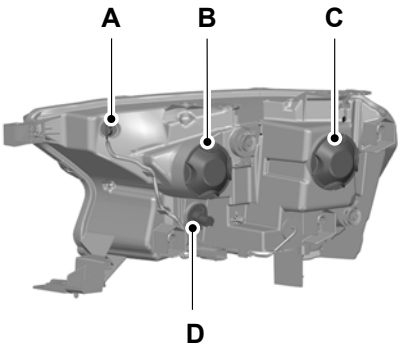
Replacing the Headlamp Bulbs

WARNING

Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb by only its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

Note: *For replacement of HID type headlamp globes, see your authorized dealer.*

Note: *If the bulb is accidentally touched, it should be cleaned with rubbing alcohol before being used.*

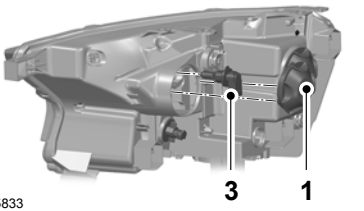


E205822

Headlamp assembly:

A. Front parking lamp bulb.
B. High beam headlamp bulb/ Daytime running lamp bulb.
C. Low beam headlamp bulb.
D. Direction indicator lamp bulb.

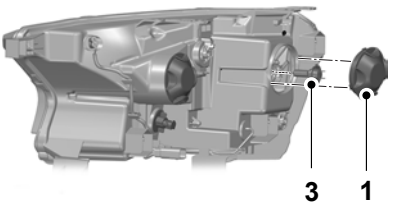
Replacing the High Beam Headlamp Bulb



E205833

1. Remove the service cap.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Remove the bulb from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise and pull it straight out.[1]
4. Install the new bulb in reverse order.

Replacing the Low Beam Headlamp Bulb



E205825

1. Remove the service cap.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Remove the bulb from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise and pull it straight out.[1]

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

4. Release the retainer spring and remove the bulb from the headlamp assembly by pulling it straight out.[2]

[1]- Projector type headlamp assembly.

[2]- Reflector type headlamp assembly.

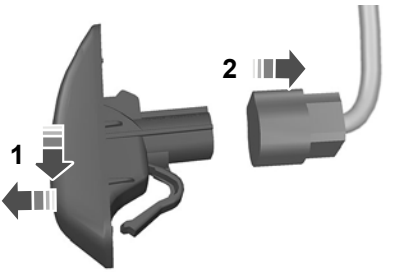
Replacing the Front Parking Bulb

1. Turn the bulb assembly counterclockwise and remove it from the headlamp assembly.
2. Remove the bulb by gently pulling it straight out of the socket.
3. Install the new bulb in reverse order.

Replacing the Direction Indicator Lamp Bulb

1. Turn the bulb assembly counterclockwise and remove it from the headlamp assembly.
2. Remove the bulb from the bulb socket by gently pushing it into the socket and turning it counterclockwise.
3. Install the new bulb in reverse order.

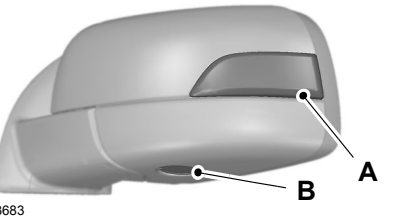
Side Repeater



E133682

1. Slide the lens to the rear and remove it.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.

Approach Lamp and Side Repeater



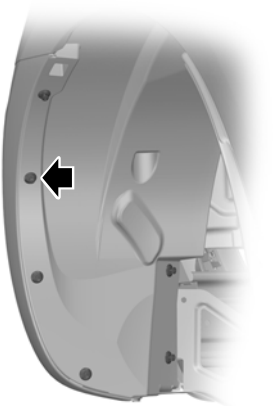
E133683

A Side repeater.

B Approach lamp.

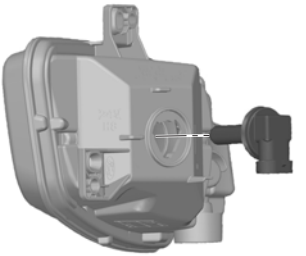
Note: *These lamps are not serviceable, contact an authorized dealer if it fails.*

Front Fog Lamps


E205847

1. Remove the screws from the splash shield at the wheel well to gain access to the lamp assembly.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

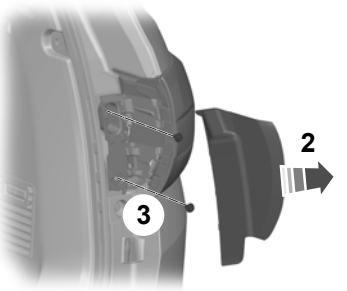


E205849

3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

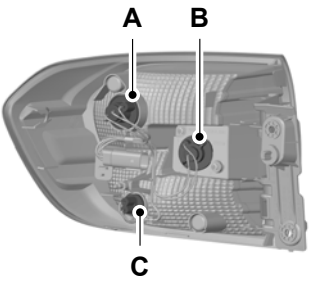
Note: *You cannot separate the fog lamp bulb from the bulb holder.*

Replacing the Tail, Brake and Turn Signal Lamp Bulbs



E206198

1. Make sure the headlamp control is in OFF position and open the liftgate.
2. Remove the tail lamp cover starting from the outboard edge using a flat tip screw driver.
3. Remove the two bolts from the lamp assembly.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector and gently pull out the lamp assembly.



E206199

A	Rear turn signal.
B	Stop/Rear Position Lamp.
C	Rear Position lamp.

1. Remove the bulb socket from the lamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
2. Remove the bulb by:
   - Rear turn signal bulb - Gently pushing it into the socket and turning it counterclockwise.
   - Stop/Rear Position Lamp- Gently pushing it into the socket and turning it counterclockwise.
   - Rear position lamp- Gently pulling the bulb from the socket.

Install the new bulbs in reverse order from the steps above.

Note: *If your vehicle is fitted with LED Stop/Rear Position Lamps these are not serviceable. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer if they fail.*

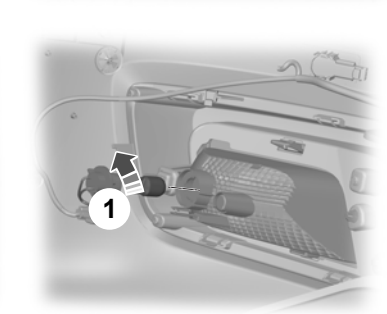
Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Replacing a Reverse Lamp Bulb

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Remove the lift gate inner grab handle cover using a standard flat tip screw driver.
3. Remove the handle by unscrewing the two screws using a standard cross tip screw driver.
4. Remove the lift gate inner trim panel to access the reverse lamp
5. Remove the bulb socket from the lamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
6. Remove the bulb by gently pulling it from the socket.

Install the new bulb in reverse order.

Replacing the Rear Fog Lamp Bulb



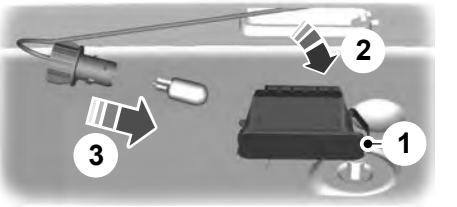
E206200

1. Remove the bulb socket from the lamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
2. Remove the bulb by gently pulling it from the socket.

Install the new bulbs in reverse order from the steps above.

Replacing the License Plate Lamp Bulb

Type 1



E72789

1. Carefully release the spring clip.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. Remove the bulb.

Type 2



E133687

1. Remove the screws.
2. Remove the lamp lens.
3. Remove the bulb.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Bulb	Specification	Power (Watts)
Headlamp low beam.[+] Headlamp low beam.[++]	H7 H11	55 55
Headlamp high beam.[*] Headlamp high beam.[**]	H15 HB3	55 60
Daytime running lamps.	H15	15
Front position lamp.	W5W	5
Front fog lamp.	H8	35
Front direction indicator.	P21W	21
Side direction indicator.	[1]	-
Rear direction indicator.	PY21W	21
Rear position lamp.	W5W	5
Rear position/Stop lamp	P21/5W	21/5
Central high mounted brake lamp.	LED	
Reversing lamp.	W16W	16
Rear fog lamp.	P21W	21
License plate lamp.	W5W	5

[+] Reflector type.

[++] Projector type.

[*] With Daytime running lamps.

[**] Without Daytime running lamps.

[1] Bulb replacement is not possible as the bulb is an integral part of the unit. The side direction indicator lamp unit has to be replaced.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER

WARNING

To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

When servicing the air cleaner, it is important that no foreign material enter the air induction system. The engine and turbocharger are susceptible to damage from even small particles.

Change the air filter element at the proper intervals.

Note: *Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*



E197418

1. Release the clamps that secure the air filter cover to the housing.
2. Carefully lift the air filter housing cover. Take care to avoid other surrounding components while lifting.
3. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
4. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing and cover to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and that you have a good seal.
5. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover.
6. Install the air filter housing cover.
7. Engage the clips to secure the air filter housing cover to the air filter housing.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Note: *If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield and the wiper blades.*

Note: *Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.*

Note: *Some car washes use water at high pressure. Due to this, water droplets may enter inside your vehicle and could also damage certain parts of your vehicle.*

Note: *Remove the aerial before using an automatic car wash.*

Note: *Switch the heater blower off to prevent contamination of the fresh air filter.*

We recommend that you wash your vehicle with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a car shampoo.

Cleaning the Headlamps

Note: *Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.*

Note: *Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.*

Cleaning the Rear Window

Note: *Do not scrape the inside of the rear window or use abrasives or chemical solvents to clean it.*

Use a clean, lint free cloth or a damp chamois leather to clean the inside of the rear window.

Cleaning the Chrome Trim

Note: *Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.*

Note: *Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces and do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces for a period of time exceeding that which is recommended.*

Note: *Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, may cause damage over a period of time.*

Cleaning the Running Boards Brightwork Trim

Note: *Do not use abrasives or harsh chemical solvents. Use stainless steel polishing/cleaning products only. i.e. recommended product Autosol or similar.*

Note: *Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces and do not leave cleaning product on Brightwork Trim surfaces for a period of time exceeding that which is recommended by cleaning product manufacturer.*

Body Paintwork Preservation

WARNINGS

Do not polish your vehicle in strong sunshine.

Do not allow polish to touch plastic surfaces. It could be difficult to remove.

Do not apply polish to the windshield or rear window. This could cause the wipers to become noisy and they may not clear the window properly.

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

Note: *Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.*

Seatbelts

Note: *Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.*

Note: *Do not allow moisture to penetrate the seatbelt retractor mechanism.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Note: *Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water . Let them dry naturally, away from artificial heat.*

Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens

Note: *Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean the instrument cluster screens, LCD screens or radio screens. These cleaning products can damage the screens.*

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

Rear Windows

Note: *Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.*

Note: *Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.*

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products are available from an authorized dealer.

Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.

Always read and follow the manufacturer's instructions before using the products.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

A decal with tire pressure data is located in the driver's door opening or on the B pillar.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold.

Note: *Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.*

Note: *Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.*

Note: *If you change the diameter of the tires from that fitted at the factory, the speedometer may not display the correct speed. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to have the engine management system reprogrammed.*

TIRE CARE

Tire Care

Inflating Your Tires

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check the pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by the Ford Motor Company.

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

WARNING

Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Tire Label located on door opening or on the B-pillar. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Note: *Do not reduce tire pressure to change the ride characteristics of the vehicle. If you do not maintain the inflation pressure at the levels specified by Ford, your vehicle may experience a condition known as shimmy. Shimmy is a severe vibration and oscillation in the steering wheel after the vehicle travels over a bump or dip in the road that does not dampen out by itself. Shimmy may result from significant under-inflation of the tires, improper tires (load range, size, or type), or vehicle modifications such as lift-kits. In the event that your vehicle experiences shimmy, you should slowly reduce speed by either lifting off the accelerator pedal or lightly applying the brakes. The shimmy will cease as the vehicle speed decreases.*

Maximum Inflation Pressure is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found next to the driver's seat on the Tire Label located on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 6°Ctemperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 0.07 bar in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even 1 km.

Note: *If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (for example, driven more than 1.6 km), never bleed or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.*

Note: *If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.*

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.

3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

Note: *If you overfill the tire, release air by pressing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.*

4. Replace the valve cap.

5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

Note: *Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For full-size and dissimilar spare tires, see the Dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly information for a description. Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.*

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.

7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

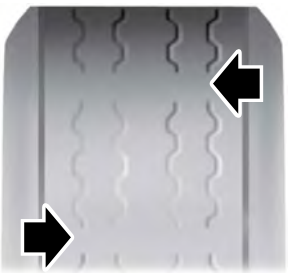
Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Inspecting Your Tires and Wheel Valve Stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

Tire Wear



E142546

Tire wear indicators are moulded in to the bottom of the tread grooves to aid in determining when to replace the tire. Tires should be replaced before the tread wears down to the same height as the wear indicators.

Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

Age

WARNING

Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

Tire Replacement Requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

WARNINGS

Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on the Tire Label. Refer to See **Technical Specifications** (page 239). If this

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

WARNINGS

information is not found on these labels then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

The two front tires or two rear tires should generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, the system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

Safety Practices

WARNINGS

If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.

Do not spin the wheels at over 56 km/h. The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

*Observe posted speed limits.

*Avoid fast starts, stops and turns.

*Avoid potholes and objects on the road.

*Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking.

Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

Tire Rotation

WARNING

If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system, then the settings for the system sensors need to be updated. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If the system is not reset, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary. See the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure in this chapter.

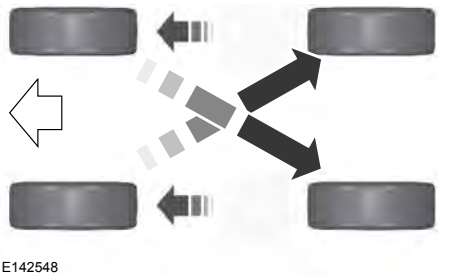
Note: *If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.*

Note: *Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly. A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

Note: *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval of between 5,000 km to 10,000 km will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Rear-wheel drive vehicles and all-wheel drive vehicles (front tires at left of diagram)



E142548

Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

WARNING

Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Examine the tires regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

Check the tire pressures (including the spare) when cold, every two weeks.

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNINGS

Do not exceed 50 km/h. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Only use snow chains of 10 mm or smaller.

Only use snow chains on the rear axle.

Note: *The anti-lock brake system will continue to operate normally.*

Vehicles with Stability Control

When stability control is on, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics. To reduce this, switch traction control off. See **Using Traction Control** (page 134).

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

WARNING

The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

You must check the tire pressures (including the spare tire where applicable) every two weeks when the tires are cold.

You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 224). The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar).

As a driver assistance feature, your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system. A warning lamp will illuminate when one or more of the tires are significantly under-inflated. If the low tire pressure warning lamp illuminates, you should stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, check the tires and inflate them to the correct pressure.

Driving on under-inflated tires can:

- Cause them to overheat.
- Lead to tire failure.
- Reduce fuel efficiency.
- Reduce tire life.
- Affect vehicle handling or stopping ability.

The system is not a substitute for correct tire maintenance.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

You must maintain the correct tire pressures, even if low tire pressure has not illuminated the warning lamp.

The tire pressure monitoring system has a system malfunction indicator to warn you when the system is not operating correctly. The malfunction indicator and low tire pressure warning lamp have a combined function. When the system detects a malfunction, the warning lamp will flash for approximately one minute and then remain illuminated. This sequence will occur every time you switch the ignition on while the malfunction remains. The system has detected a fault that requires service.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressures. A malfunction may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of a replacement tire or wheel that prevents the system from functioning correctly. Always check the tire pressure monitoring system malfunction warning after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle. Make sure the replacement tires or wheels allow the system to continue to function correctly. See **When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed** in this section.

How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures

Under normal driving conditions tire pressures may increase by up to 0.3 bar from a cold start situation.

If the vehicle is stationary overnight and the temperature is significantly lower than the daytime temperature, tire pressures may decrease by up to 0.2 bar when there is a drop in the ambient temperature of 17ºC or more. The system detects this pressure decrease as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates.

Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System



E142549

You should always have tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Note: *Each road wheel and tire is fitted with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor attaches to the valve stem. The tire covers the pressure sensor and it is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.*

Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System

You must maintain the correct tire pressures, even if low tire pressure has not illuminated the warning lamp.

The system measures the pressure in the road tires and displays a warning lamp in the instrument cluster when a low pressure is detected. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 60).

The system detects this lower pressure as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

If you need to replace a road wheel and tire with the temporary spare wheel, the system will continue to identify a defect. This is to remind you to repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle. To restore the correct operation of the system, you must have the repaired road wheel and tire assembly refitted to your vehicle.

When You Believe the System is Not Operating Correctly

The main function of the system is to warn you when the tire pressures are low. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of operating correctly. See the following chart for information concerning the system:

When Inflating the Tires

When inflating the tires the system may not respond immediately to the air added to the tires.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

System Warning Lamps

Warning lamp	Description	Action
Solid warning lamp	Tire(s) under-inflated	1. Make sure tires are at the correct pressure. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 224). The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar). 2. After inflating the tires to the correct pressure you must carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure** in this chapter.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service.
Solid warning lamp initially followed by a flashing warning lamp	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service.

If the Warning Lamp is On:

1. Check each tire to verify that none are flat.
2. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.
3. Check the tire pressures and inflate all the tires to the correct pressure.
4. Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure

Overview

You must carry out the system reset procedure after each tire replacement or adjustment of the tire pressures.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle requires different tire pressures in the front tires compared to the rear tires.

The system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

The tires need to be periodically rotated to provide consistent performance and maximum tire life, the system needs to know when the tires have been rotated to determine which set of tires are on the front and rear axles. With this information, the system can detect and correctly warn of low tire pressures.

Carrying Out the System Reset Procedure

1. Check the tire pressures and inflate all the tires to the correct pressure.



E238926

2. Press and hold the tire pressure monitor reset switch for 3 seconds. The warning indicator blinks 3 times to acknowledge the reset procedure was successful.

If a flat tire is still present after you perform the tire pressure monitor reset procedure, the warning indicator remains illuminated in the instrument cluster. Make sure all of your tires are inflated to the correct pressure before performing the reset procedure.

Type Approvals

Refer to See **Type Approvals** (page 397). for Tire Pressure Monitoring Sensor Radio Frequency Compliance details.

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

Lug Nuts

You can obtain replacement locking lug nuts or a locking lug nut key using the reference number certificate.

Vehicle Jack

WARNINGS

Ensure screwthread is adequately lubricated before use.

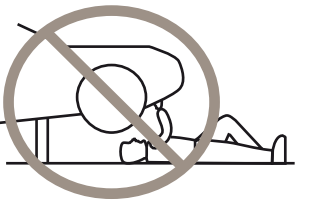
The jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.

Switch the ignition off and apply the park brake fully before lifting vehicle.

It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



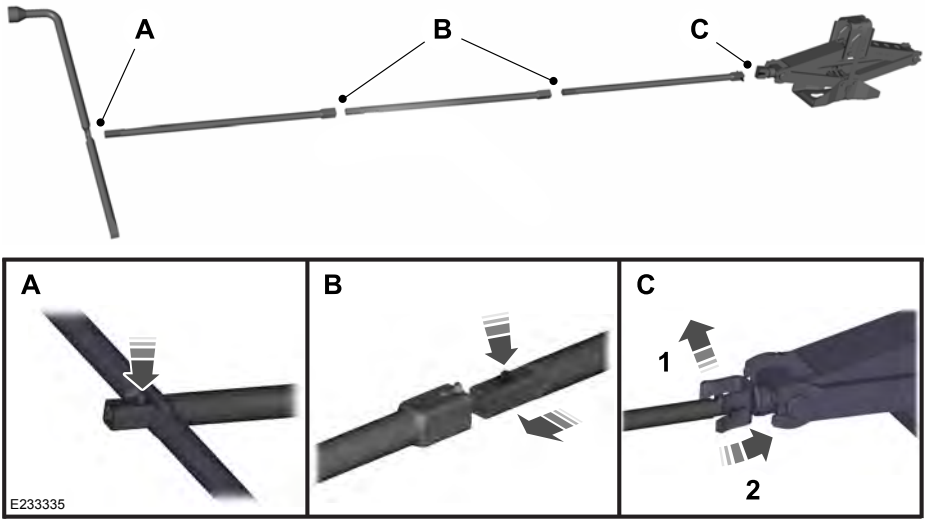
E166722

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

WARNING

WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing wheels. Do not use the vehicle jack other than when you are changing a wheel in an emergency.

Vehicle Jack Assembly



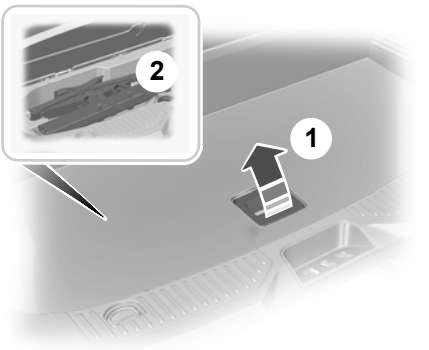
A Wheel Brace
B Jack Handle and Extensions
C Vehicle Jack

The jack, wheel brace, and winch extension tool are located in the stowage compartment under the rear floor.

No maintenance or additional lubrication of your jack is required over the service life of your vehicle.

Do not use the jack if it is visibly damaged or does not operate freely. If these conditions are detected, replace the damaged jack with a jack specified for use on your vehicle.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing



E206399

1. Lift the stowage bin lid.
2. Remove the locking strap and remove the tools.
3. Rotate the retaining nut and remove the jack.

No maintenance or additional lubrication of your jack is required over the service life of your vehicle.

Do not use the jack if it is visibly damaged or does not operate freely. If these conditions are detected, replace the damaged jack with a jack specified for use on your vehicle.

Spare Wheel

Note: *If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, drive the shortest distance possible.*

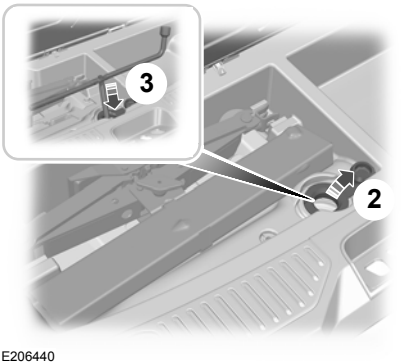
Note: *Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.*

Note: *The spare wheel has a label showing the maximum driving speed. Drive with caution and at no more than the permitted maximum speed.*

Note: *The usage of a dissimilar spare wheel or tire at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the handling, stability and braking performance, comfort and noise.*

Note: *The spare wheel is located underneath the rear of the vehicle.*

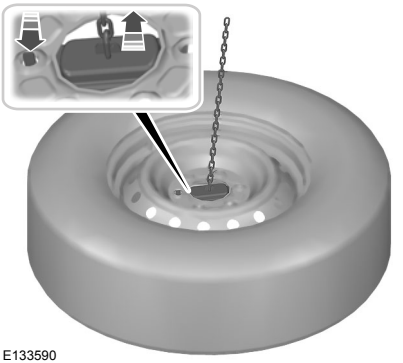
1. Assemble the wheel brace and the winch extension tool.
2. Lower the third row seat-back to assist spare wheel winch operation. See **Technical Specifications** (page 239).



E206440

3. In the rear storage compartment, lift rubber cover to expose wheel winch.
4. Insert the assembled wheel brace and winch extension tool into the guide hole and make sure it locates correctly. Turn the wheel brace counter-clockwise until the spare wheel lowers from underneath the vehicle and rests on the ground, and there is slack in the cable.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

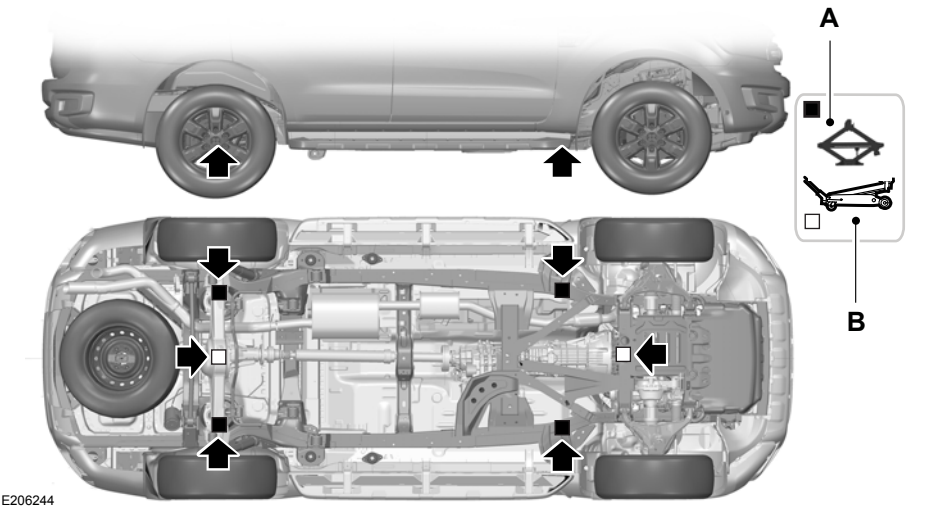

E133590

5. Pass the bracket and cable through the wheel opening.

Jacking and Lifting Points

WARNING

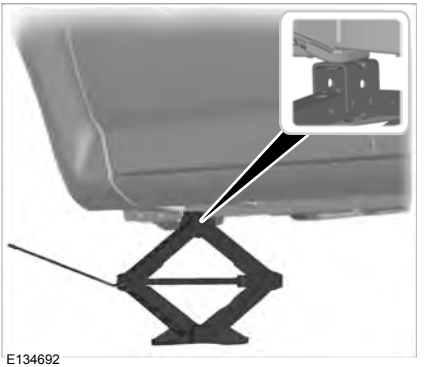
Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.



E206244

A Emergency use only (vehicle jack).
B Maintenance (trolley jack).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

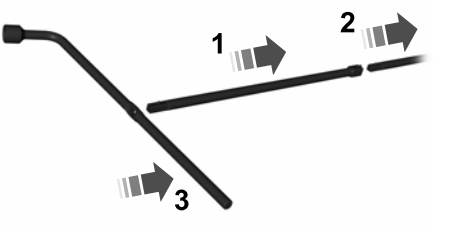

E134692

Removing a Road Wheel

WARNINGS

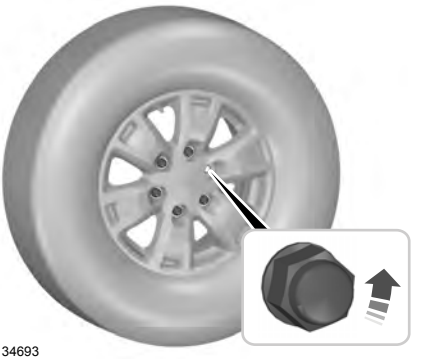
- Park your vehicle in such a position that neither the traffic nor you are hindered or endangered.
- Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead.
- If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).
- Secure the diagonally opposite wheel with an appropriate block or wheel chock.
- Make sure that the vehicle jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.
- Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

Note: *Do not lay alloy road wheels face down on the ground.*



E79153

1. Assemble the wheel brace and winch extension tool.
2. Insert the assembled wheel brace and winch extension tool into the vehicle jack and raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.


E134693

3. Using the wheel brace, remove the lug nuts and the road wheel.

Installing a Road Wheel

WARNINGS

- Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

WARNINGS

Do not fit run flat tires on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. See an authorized dealer for more details about compatibility.

Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel lugs and nuts. This can cause the lug nuts to loosen while driving.

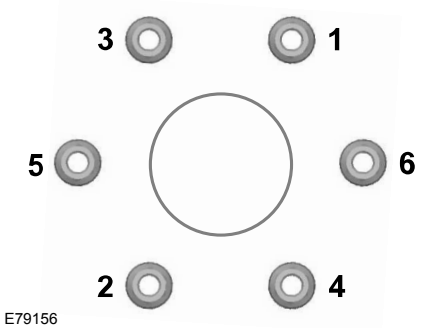
Have the lug nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

Do not install alloy wheels using lug nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

Note: *Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign matter.*

Note: *Make sure that the cones on the lug nuts are against the wheel.*

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the lug nuts and finger tight.
3. Install the locking lug nut key.



4. Install all of the lug nuts and partially tighten them in the sequence shown.
5. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
6. Fully tighten all of the lug nuts in the sequence shown using the wheel brace. See **Technical Specifications** (page 239).
7. Position the projection of the cap and the projection of the hub correctly.

Note: *If the spare wheel is different in size or construction to the road wheels, have this corrected as soon as possible.*

Stowing the Flat Tire

Note: *Do not raise the spare wheel carrier without the wheel attached. Damage can occur to the winch mechanism if raised without a wheel attached.*

1. Place the wheel flat on the ground, with the outer face of the wheel facing up.
2. Tilt the bracket, and pass it through the center of the wheel.
3. Insert the winch extension tool into the winch and turn clockwise.
4. Stow the wheel brace, vehicle jack and winch extension tool away.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Wheel Nut Torque

Vehicle Type	Torque
All	135 Nm

Tire Pressures (Cold Tires)

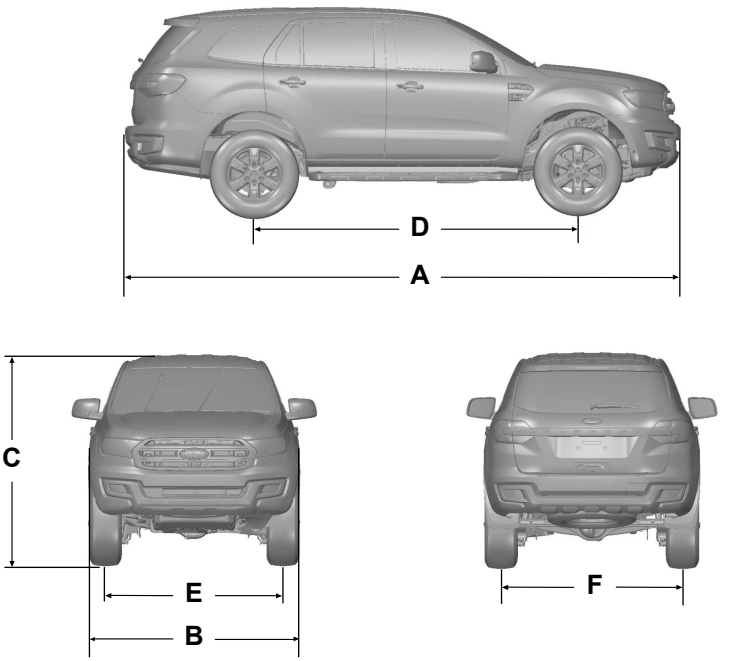
Tire Size	Normal Load		ECO**		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
265/65 R17 112T*	210 kPa	210 kPa	240 kPa	240 kPa	240 kPa	300 kPa
265/60 R18 110T*	210 kPa	210 kPa	240 kPa	240 kPa	240 kPa	300 kPa
265/50 R20 107T*	240 kPa	240 kPa	N/A	N/A	240 kPa	300 kPa

*Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

** ECO tire inflation pressures are recommended for optimal fuel consumption.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS



E222835

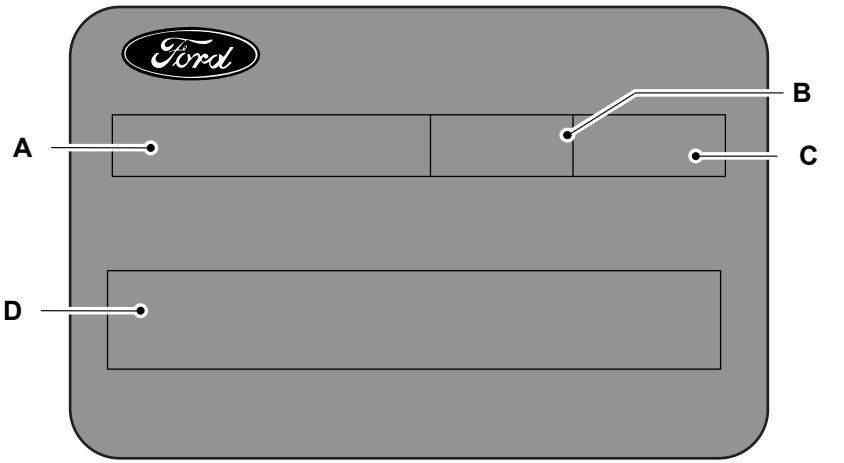
Callout	Dimension Description	mm
A	Maximum length.	4,892 mm
B	Overall width excluding exterior mirrors.	1,860 mm
C	Overall height.	1,837 mm

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Callout	Dimension Description	mm
D	Wheelbase.	2,850 mm
E	Front track.	1,560 mm
F	Rear track.	1,564 mm

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE



E213504

A Model
B Paint Code
C "Built Date"
D Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The label with your vehicle built date is located on the bottom of the lock side of the passenger door aperture.

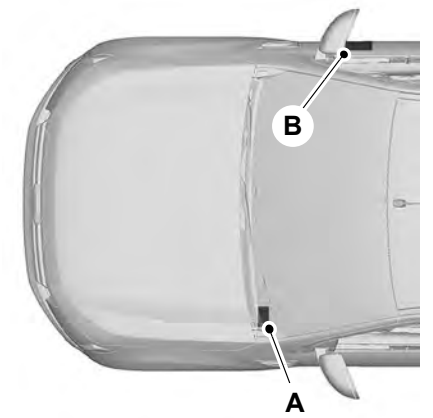
"Built Date"

"Built date" means the calendar month and the year in which the body shell and power train sub-assemblies are conjoined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

The vehicle identification number is on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



E133363

The vehicle identification number is also stamped beneath the front door on the chassis, on the right-hand side.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

Radio reception factors	
Distance and Strength	The further you travel away from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass near a radio transmission tower, a stronger signal can override a weaker signal and can cause interference in the audio system.

CD and CD Player Information

Note: *CD units play commercially pressed 4.75-inch (12 centimeter) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.*

Note: *Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact an authorized dealer for further information.*

Note: *Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.*

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than MP3 and WMA), only files with the MP3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all MP3 and WMA files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the MP3 and WMA files in the current folder.

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/AUX IN/USB/ BLUETOOTH

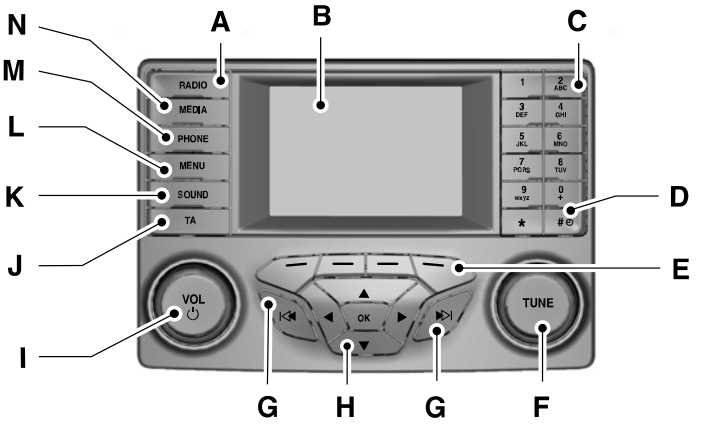
WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *Depending on your vehicle option package, your system may look different from what you see here.*

Note: *Some features may not be available in your location. Check with an authorized dealer.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing



E209952

A **RADIO:** Press this button to listen to the radio or cycle through radio frequency bands.

B **Display screen:** Shows audio information.

C **Number block (Station preset buttons):** In radio mode, station preset buttons allows you to store your favorite stations for later access. When tuned to any station, press and hold a preset buttons until sound returns. In phone mode, press the buttons to enter a phone number.

D **Clock:** Press this button to access the clock setting. Use the center arrow controls to change the hours and minutes. You can also set the clock by pressing the MENU button and scrolling to Clock Settings.

E **Function buttons:** Select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode you are in (such as Radio mode).

F **TUNE:** In radio mode, turn to search the frequency band in individual increments.

G **Seek:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the next station up the band. Press and hold the button to seek endlessly through the frequency band and release to stop on the next station.

H **Cursor arrows and OK:** Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit.

I **Seek:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the next station up the band. Press and hold the button to seek endlessly through the frequency band and release to stop on the next station.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

J **VOL and Power:** Press this button to turn the system off and on. Turn it to adjust the volume.

K **TA:** Press this button to turn Traffic Announcement on or off.

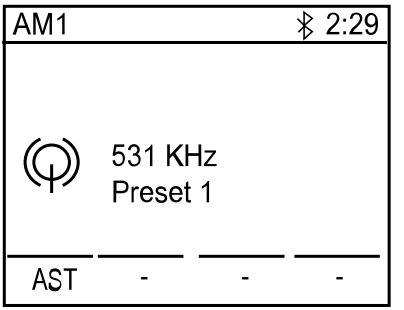
L **SOUND:** Press this button to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade and Balance. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **SOUND** to exit. Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.

M **MENU:** Press this button to access the menu where you can adjust Audio, Clock and language settings.

N **PHONE:** Press this button to access the phone features. See **Ford Audio** later in this chapter.

O **MEDIA:** Press this button to access your auxiliary inputs or switch between bluetooth audio devices you plug into the input jack or USB port.

Note: *An integrated multi-function display shows important information about your audio system controls.*



E225070

A Descriptions for function buttons 1-4

Function buttons 1 to 4 are context dependent, and change according to the current unit mode. The description for the function displays in the screen.

On, Off, Volume Control Knob

Press the On, Off control. This will also operate the unit for up to one hour with the ignition turned off.

The radio will switch off automatically after one hour.

Sound Button

This will allow you to adjust the sound settings (for example bass, middle and treble).

1. Press the **SOUND** button.
2. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to make the necessary adjustment. The display indicates the level selected.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm the new settings.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Waveband Button

Press the **RADIO** button repeatedly to select from the wavebands available.

You can use the selector to return to radio reception when you have been listening to another source.

Alternatively, press the up/down arrow button to display the available wavebands. Scroll to the required waveband and press **OK**.

Station Tuning Control

Seek Tuning

Select a waveband and briefly press one of the seek buttons. The unit will stop at the first station it finds in the direction you have chosen.

Manual Tuning

1. Use the TUNE dial to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
2. Press **OK** to continue listening to a station.

Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store your favorite stations, they can be recalled by selecting the appropriate waveband and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a waveband.
2. Tune to the station required.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons until you hear a beep. When the station has been stored, the preset number along with the station name or frequency is displayed for confirmation.

You can repeat this on each waveband and for each preset button.

Note: *When you drive to another part of the country, stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency and station name for that area.*

Autostore Control

This will store up to a maximum of the ten strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM waveband and overwrite the previously stored stations. You can also store stations manually in the same way as other wavebands.

1. Press and hold **function button 1** or the **RADIO** button.
2. When the search is complete, sound is restored and the strongest signals are stored on the autostore presets.

Traffic Information Control

Many stations that broadcast on the FM waveband have a TP code to signify that they carry traffic program information.

Turning Traffic Announcements On and Off

Before you can receive traffic announcements, you must press either the **TA** button. A TA display will appear to show the feature is switched on and the radio will tune to a station that supports traffic program information (if available).

The TA icon will change state depending on the current status of traffic program information being received:



The TA feature is on however the current tuned station does not support traffic program information.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

TA The TA feature is on and the current tuned station supports traffic program information, but is not currently broadcasting any traffic program information.

TA The current tuned station is broadcasting traffic program information.

When traffic information is broadcast, it will automatically interrupt normal radio or CD playback and **Traffic announcement** will appear in the display.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless **TA** or **TRAFFIC** is turned off, then on again.

Traffic Announcement Volume

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes.

To adjust the preset volume:

- Use the volume control to make the necessary adjustment during an incoming traffic announcement broadcast. The display will show the level selected.

Ending Traffic Announcements

The audio unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press **TA** during the announcement.

Note: *If you press TA at any other time it will switch all announcements off.*

Automatic Volume Control

When available, automatic volume control (AVC) adjusts the volume level to compensate for engine noise and road speed noise.

1. Press the **MENU** button and select **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
2. Select **ADAPTIVE VOL**.
3. Use the left or right arrow button to adjust the setting.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm your selection.
5. Press the **MENU** button to return.

Digital Signal Processing (DSP)

DSP Occupancy

This feature takes into account the differences in distance from the various speakers in the vehicle to each seat. Select the sitting position for which the audio is to be correctly enhanced.

DSP Equalizer

Select the music category that most suits your listening preference. The audio output will change to enhance the particular style of music chosen.

Changing the DSP Settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to the required DSP function.
4. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
5. Press the **OK** button to confirm your selection.
6. Press the **MENU** button to return.

News Broadcasts

Your audio unit may interrupt normal reception to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband, radio data system (RDS) or other enhanced network linked stations.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

The display will indicate there is an incoming announcement, during news broadcasts. When the audio unit interrupts for a news broadcast the preset volume level will be the same as traffic announcements.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to **NEWS** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

Alternative Frequencies

The majority of programs that broadcast on the FM waveband have a program identification code, it can be recognized by audio units.

When your vehicle moves from one transmission area to another with the alternative frequencies tuning switched on, this function will search for the strongest station signal.

Under certain conditions, alternative frequencies tuning may temporarily disrupt normal reception.

When selected, the unit continually evaluates signal strength and, if a better signal becomes available, the unit will switch to that alternative. It mutes while it checks a list of alternative frequencies and if necessary, it will search once across the selected waveband for a genuine alternative frequency.

It will restore radio reception when it finds one or if one is not found, the unit will return to the original stored frequency.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to**ALTERNATIVE FREQ.** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

Regional Mode

Regional mode controls the behavior of alternative frequencies switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster. A broadcaster may run a fairly large network across a large part of the country. At various times of the day this large network may be broken down into a number of smaller regional networks, typically centered on major towns or cities. When the network is not split into regional variants, the whole network carries the same programming.

Regional mode ON: This prevents random alternative frequency switches when neighboring regional networks are not carrying the same programming.

Regional mode OFF: This allows a larger coverage area if neighboring regional networks are carrying the same programming, but can cause random alternative frequency switches if they are not.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to **RDS REGIONAL** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

Ford Audio

Ford Audio is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone and portable media player.

This allows you to:

- Make and receive calls
- Access and play music from your media player
- Access phonebook contacts and music

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

- Stream music from your connected cell phone
- Charge your USB device (if your device supports this)

Support

For further support, see an authorized dealer. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

Safety Information

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

When using Ford Audio:

- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Carefully place cords and cables where you cannot step on them or they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. Refer to your device's manual for further information.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorized dealer.

Privacy Information

When a cell phone is connected to the AHU, the system creates a profile that is linked to that cell phone. The system creates the profile to offer you more mobile features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your phonebook and call history. This will include the history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. This data is deleted from the AHU upon removal of the phone via the BT Phone connections menu. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you delete all paired phones If you connect a media player, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The media player index and development log will remain in the system unless deleted by a battery disconnect or via diagnostic command using special equipment. It are only accessible in your vehicle only when you connect your media player and cannot be accessed via the USB port with other devices.

Using Voice Pass Through

iPhone users can access Siri by pressing the voice button on the steering wheel controls. Android users can access OK Google by pressing the voice button on the steering wheel controls.

Helpful Hints

Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.

Before giving a voice command, wait for the system announcement to finish followed by a single beep. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.

You can interrupt the system at any time while it is speaking by pressing the voice button. You can also cancel a voice session at any time by pressing and holding the voice button.

Using Ford Audio with Your Phone

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of Ford Audio.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Using privacy mode.
- Dialing a number.
- Redialing.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features such as using Bluetooth audio and automatic phonebook download are cell phone dependent features. To check your cell phone's compatibility, refer to your device's manual or visit the regional Ford website.

Pairing a Cell Phone For the First Time

Wirelessly pairing your cell phone with the system allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

Note: *You must switch radio on.*

1. Make sure the Bluetooth feature on your cell phone is switched on before starting the search. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button then scroll to **BLUETOOTH** devices then press the **OK** button. When the audio display indicates that no phones are paired, select the option to add.
3. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for **Ford audio** on your cell phone to start the pairing process.
4. Select **Ford audio** on your cell phone.
5. Wait until the PIN appears on the phone display. Compare the PIN on the phone with the PIN shown in the audio display and accept the request on the phone and the vehicle display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Note: *In some cases the phone will request to enter a PIN. Enter the four-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.*

Depending on your cell phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current cell phone as the primary cell phone (the cell phone the system automatically tries to connect with first when you switch the ignition on) or downloading your phonebook.



The information display may show your cell phone's battery charge level and signal strength.

Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones

Wirelessly pairing your cell phone with the system allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

Note: *You must switch the ignition and radio on.*

Note: *To scroll through the menus, press the up or down arrows on your audio system.*

1. Make sure the Bluetooth feature on your cell phone is switched on before starting the search. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button.
3. Select the option for Bluetooth devices.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

4. Press the **OK** button.
5. Select the option to add. This starts the pairing process.
6. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for **Ford audio** on your device to start the pairing process.
7. Select **Ford audio** on your cell phone.
8. Wait until the PIN appears on the phone display. Compare the PIN on the phone with the PIN shown in the audio display and accept the request on the phone and the vehicle display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Note: *In some cases the phone will request to enter a PIN. Enter the four-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.*

The system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current cell phone as the master primary cell phone or downloading your phonebook.

Receiving a Call

When receiving a call, you can:

- Answer the call by pressing the accept call button on the steering wheel or by selecting the accept call option in the audio display pressing the **OK** button.
- Reject the call by pressing the reject call button on the steering wheel or by selecting the reject call option in the audio and pressing the **OK** button.
- Ignore the call by doing nothing.

Cell Phone Options During an Active Call

During an active call, you have extra menu features which become available, for example putting a call on hold.

To access this menu, choose one of the options available at the bottom of the audio display or select the option for more.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Mic. off	Turn your vehicle's microphone off. To turn the microphone on, select the option again.
Privacy	Switch a call from an active hands-free environment to your cell phone for a more private conversation. When selected, the audio display will indicate the call is private.
Hold	Put an active call on hold. When selected, the audio display will indicate the call is on hold.
Active call	Swap the active call between Line 1 or Line 2 when 2 calls are active.

Accessing Features Through the Cell Phone Menu

You can access your call history and phonebook.

The system attempts to automatically re-download your phonebook and call history each time your cell phone connects to the system. You must turn on the auto download feature if your cell phone supports it.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Note: *This is a cell phone dependent feature.*

1. Press the **PHONE** button to enter the cell phone menu.
2. Select one of the options available.

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Dial a number	Dial a number using the audio system numeric keypad.	
Redial	Redial the last number called (if available). Press the **OK** button to select.	
Phonebook	Access your downloaded phonebook. 1. Press the **OK** button to confirm and enter. You can use the options at the bottom of the screen to quickly access an alphabetical category. You can also use the letters on the keypad to jump in the list. 2. Scroll through your phonebook contacts. 3. Press the **OK** button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 4. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.	
Call history	Access any previously dialed, received or missed calls. 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select either incoming calls, outgoing calls or missed calls. Press the **OK** button to make your selection. 3. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.	
Speed Dial	Select one of 10 speed dial entries. To set a speed dial entry, go to the phonebook and press and hold one of the numbers on the audio system numeric keypad.	
BT Devices	Access the following option for Bluetooth device menu listings:	
	Add	Pair a new device.
	Delete	Delete a paired device.
	Conn.	Connect to the selected device.
	Discon.	Disconnect from the selected device.
	Master	Make the selected device the favourite device.
Phone settings	View various settings and features on your cell phone.	

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Accessing Your Cell Phone Settings

These are cell phone dependent features. Your cell phone settings allow you to access and adjust features such as modify your phonebook and set up automatic download.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the phone settings option appears, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set as master	If this option is checked, the system will use this cell phone as the master when there is more than one cell phone paired to the system. This option can be changed for all paired cell phones (not only for the active one) using the Bluetooth devices menu.
Phone status	See the cell phone name, provider name, cell phone number, signal level and battery level. When done, press the left arrow button to return to the cell phone status menu.
Phonebook pref.	Modify the contents of your phonebook, e.g. add, delete, download. Press the **OK** button to select and scroll between the options in the table below.

To modify the phone book preferences, choose from the following:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Download now	Press the **OK** button to select and download your phonebook to the system.	
Auto-download	When automatic download is switched off, your phonebook will not be downloaded when your cell phone connects to the system. Your phonebook, call history and text messages can only be accessed when your paired cell phone is connected to the system. Check or uncheck this option to automatically download your phonebook each time your cell phone connects to the system. Downloading times are cell phone dependent and quantity dependent.	
Sort By:	Enabling this feature allows you to select how your contacts are displayed. You can select:	
	First/Last name	Last/First name

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Bluetooth Devices

This menu provides access to your Bluetooth devices. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options. It allows you to add, connect and delete devices and set a cell phone as primary.

Bluetooth Devices Menu Options

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the Bluetooth device option appears, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Add	Pair additional cell phones to the system. 1. Select the option to add to start the pairing process. 2. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for **Ford audio** on your cell phone. Refer to your device's manual if necessary. 3. Select Ford Audio on your cell phone. 4. Wait until the PIN appears on the phone display. Compare the PIN on the phone with the PIN shown in the audio display and accept the request on the phones and the vehicles display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.* 5. When the option to set the cell phone as the master cell phone appears, select either yes or no. 6. Depending on the functionality of your cell phone, the system may ask you extra questions (for example, if you would like to download your phonebook). Select either yes or no to confirm your response.
Delete	After deleting a cell phone from the list, the cell phone can only be connected again by repeating the full pairing process. Select the delete option and confirm when the system asks to delete the selected device.
Master	The system attempts to connect with the master cell phone every time you switch the ignition on. When a cell phone is selected as master, it appears first in the list and is marked with an asterisk. Set a previously paired cell phone as your master cell phone. Select the master option to confirm the master cell phone.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
Conn.	Connect a previously paired cell phone. You can only have one cell phone connected at a time to use the cell phone functionality. When another cell phone is connected, the previous cell phone will be disconnected from the telephone services. The system allows you to use different Bluetooth devices for the cell phone functionality and the Bluetooth audio music playback feature at the same time.
Discon.	Disconnects the selected cell phone. Select this option and confirm when asked to. After disconnecting a cell phone, it can be connected again without repeating the full pairing process.

*In some cases the phone will request to enter a PIN. Enter the four-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Media Menu Features

The media menu allows you to select how to play your music, for example by artist, genre, shuffle or repeat, and to find similar music or reset the index of your USB devices.

Press the **OPTION** buttons to get these features.

Message	Description and Action
Shuffle	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Repeat track	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.

Using Ford Audio With Your Media Player

You can access and play music from your media player through your vehicle's speaker system using the system's media menu. You can also sort and play your music by specific categories, for example artist or albums.

Ford Audio is capable of hosting nearly any media player including: iPod, from device players, and most USB drives. Ford Audio also supports audio formats, for example MP3, WMA, WAV and ACC.

Confirm that the USB device has been formatted correctly and has the following specifications:

- USB 2.0.
- File format must be FAT16/32.

Note: *NTFS file format is not supported.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

The format of the audio files on the USB device must be:

- MP3.
- Non DRM protected WMA.
- WAV.
- AAC.

Connecting Your Media Player to the USB Port

Note: *If your media player has a power switch, make sure you switch on the device.*

To Connect Using the System Menu

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press the **MEDIA** button to select USB then an initializing message appears in the display. Initialization can take several minutes depending on the content of the device. Once initialized your music will automatically begin playing.

Accessing Your USB Song Library

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press **MEDIA** button to select USB playback.

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	This menu allows you to select and play your media files by artist, album, genre, playlist and track or even to browse what is on your USB device.

If there are no media files to access, the display indicates there is no media. If there are media files, you have the following options to scroll through and select:

Message	Description and Action
Play all	Play all indexed media files from your playing device one at a time in numerical order.* 1. Press **OK** to select. The first track title appears in the display.
Playlists	Access your playlists from formats, ASX, M3U, WPL or MTP.* 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired playlist, and then press **OK**.
Songs	Search for and play a specific indexed track. * 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired track, and then press **OK**.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Message	Description and Action
Artists	Sort all indexed media files by artist. Once selected, the system lists and then plays all artists and tracks alphabetically.* 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired artist, and then press **OK**.
Albums	Sort all indexed media files by albums.* 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired albums, and then press **OK**.
Genres	Sort indexed music by genre type.* 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired genre, and then press **OK**.
Browse USB	Browse all supported media files on your media player connected to the USB port. You can only view media files that are compatible with Ford Audio; other saved files are not visible. 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to browse indexed media files on your flash drive, and then press **OK**.
Reset USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete, you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

* You can use the buttons at the bottom of the audio display to jump to a certain alphabetical category quickly. You can also use the letters on the numeric keypad to jump in the list.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

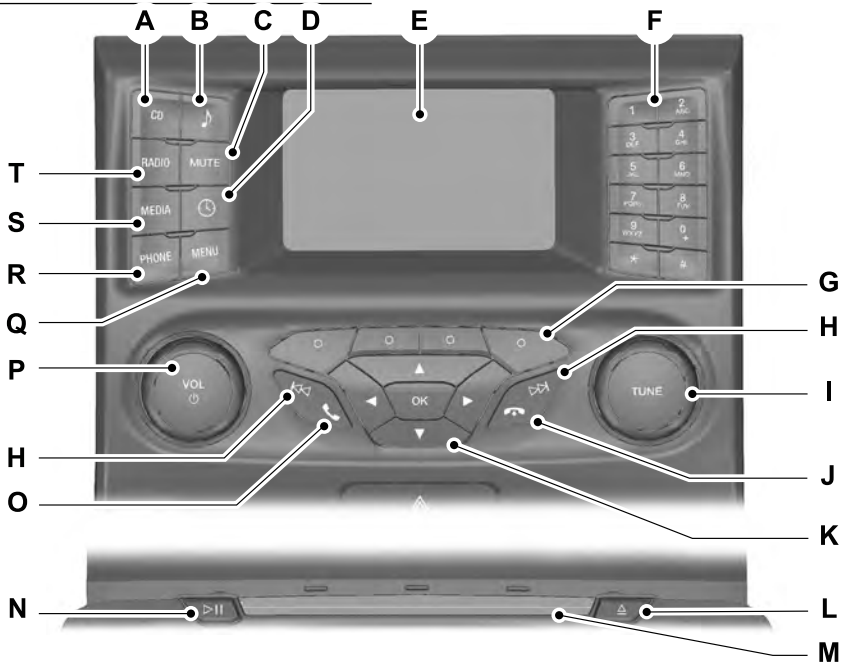
AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD/SYNC

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *Depending on your vehicle option package, your system may look different from what you see here.*

Note: *Some features may not be available in your location. Check with an authorized dealer.*



E247757

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

A **CD:** Press to listen to a CD. Press the function buttons below the radio screen to select on-screen options of Repeat or Shuffle.

B **SOUND:** Press to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade and Balance. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit. Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.

C **MUTE** or **TA:** Press to mute the playing media. Press to switch traffic announcements on or off. This also cancels announcements during an active announcement.

D **Clock:** Press to access the clock setting. Use the center arrow controls to change the hours and minutes. You can also set the clock by pressing the **MENU** button and scrolling to Clock Settings.

E **Display screen:** Shows audio and SYNC information.

F **Number block:** In radio mode, store your favorite stations for later access. When tuned to any station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns. In CD mode, press a button to select a track. In phone mode, press the buttons to enter a phone number.

G **Function buttons:** Select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode you are in (such as Radio mode or CD mode).

H **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press either button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In CD mode, press to select the next or previous track. Press and hold to move quickly forward or backward through the current track.

I **TUNE:** In radio mode, press to search through the radio frequency band.

J **End phone call:** Press to end a phone call.

K **OK and cursor arrows:** Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit.

L **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.

M **CD slot:** Insert a CD.

N **Play/Pause:** Press to either play or pause a track when listening to a CD.

O **Answer or Make phone call:** Press to either answer an incoming phone call or to make a phone call.

p **VOL and Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.

Q **MENU:** Press to access different audio system features.

R **PHONE:** Press to access the phone features of the SYNC system. See your SYNC information.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

S **MEDIA:** Press to access your auxiliary input jack or switch between devices you plug into the input jack or USB port.

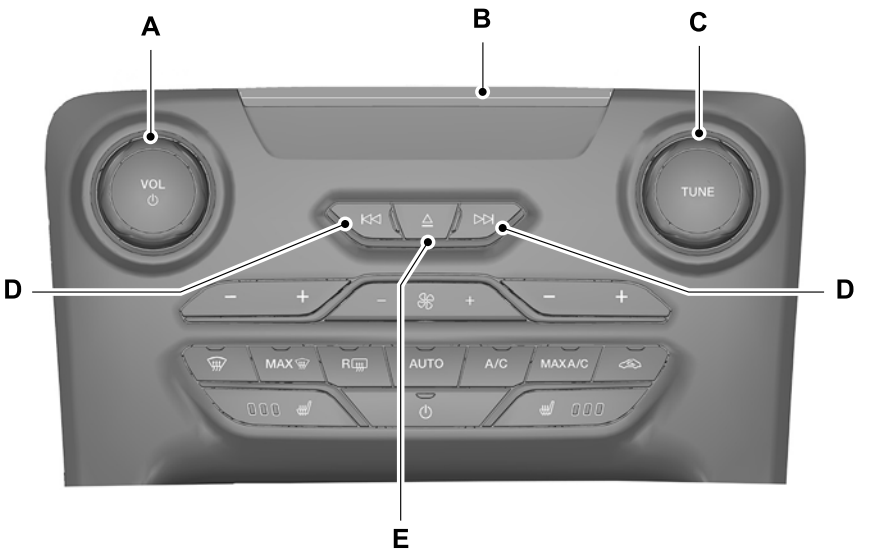
T **RADIO:** Press to listen to the radio or change radio stations. Press the function buttons below the radio screen to select different radio functions.

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD/SYNC/ TOUCHSCREEN DISPLAY

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing



E248373

A **VOL and Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.

B **CD slot:** Insert a CD.

C **TUNE:** In radio mode, press to search through the radio frequency band.

D **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a radio station and press either button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In CD mode, press to select the next or previous track. Press and hold to move quickly forward or backward through the current track.

E **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.

COMPACT DISC PLAYER

Compact Disc Playback

Note: *During playback, the display indicates the disc, track and time that have elapsed since the start of the track.*

During radio reception, press **CD** once to start CD playback.

After you load a disc, playback starts immediately.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Track Selection

- Press the seek up once to move to the next track or press it repeatedly to access later tracks.
- Press the seek down once to replay the current track. If you press within two seconds of the start of a track, the previous track plays.
- Press the seek down repeatedly to select previous tracks.
- Press the up or down arrow to select the required track, then press ***OK***.

You can select a track by using the numeric keypad. Dial the track number until complete (for example, 1 then 2 for track 12), or dial the number and directly press ***OK***.

Fast Forward and Reverse

Press and hold the seek up or down to search forward or backward through the tracks.

Shuffle and Random

Random track playback, also known as shuffle, plays all tracks on the CD in random order.

Type 1

Note: *When an MP3 CD is playing, you can have the system shuffle tracks for the whole CD, or within the current folder.*

Press ***shuffle*** in ***CD MODE***.

Type 2

Note: *When an MP3 CD is playing, you can have the system shuffle tracks for the whole CD, or within the current folder.*

Press ***MENU*** and select ***CD MODE***.

Select ***shuffle*** to switch the function on or off.

Type 3

Note: *When an MP3 CD is playing, you can have the system shuffle tracks for the whole CD, or within the current folder.*

Press function button 2.

Use the seek up or down button to select the next track to shuffle, if required.

Repeat Compact Disc Tracks

Type 1

Note: *When an MP3 CD is playing, you can have the system repeat the current track or all tracks within the current folder.*

Press **REPEAT** in ***CD MODE***.

Type 2

Note: *When an MP3 CD is playing, you can have the system repeat the current track or all tracks within the current folder.*

Press ***MENU*** and select ***CD MODE***.

Select **REPEAT** to switch the function on or off. The track replays after it ends.

Type 3

Note: *When an MP3 CD is playing, you can have the system repeat the current track or all tracks within the current folder.*

Press function button 1.

Compact Disc Track Scanning

The scan function allows you to preview each track for approximately 8 seconds.

Type 1

Note: *When an MP3 CD is playing, you can have the system scan tracks on the CD or within the current folder.*

Press ***CD/AUX*** to select ***CD MODE***.

Lightly press ***SCAN/AS*** to scan CD.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Type 2

Note: *When an MP3 CD is playing, you can have the system scan tracks on the CD or within the current folder. Press* ***OK*** *to toggle these options.*

Various scan modes are possible, according to the type of CD currently playing.

Press ***MENU*** and select ***CD MODE***.

Select **SCAN** to switch the function on or off.

Type 3

Note: *When an MP3 CD is playing, you can have the system scan tracks on the CD or within the current folder.*

Press function button 3.

MP3 File Playback

MP3 (MPEG 1 Audio Layer-3) is a standard technology and format for compressing audio data. This allows a more efficient use of the media.

You can play MP3 files recorded on CD-ROM, CD-R and CD-RW formats. The disc must be in the ISO 9660 level 1 or level 2 format, or Joliet or Romeo in the expansion format. You can also use a disc recorded in multi session.

ISO 9660 Format

This is the most common international standard for the logical format of files and folders on a CD-ROM.

There are several specification levels. In Level 1, file names must be in the 8.3 format (no more than eight characters in the name, no more than three characters in the extension MP3 and WMA) and in capital letters.

Folder names can be no longer than eight characters. There can be no more than eight folder levels (trees). Level 2 specifications allow file names up to 31 characters long.

Each folder can have up to eight trees.

For Joliet or Romeo in the expansion format, consider these restrictions when configuring your CD writing software.

Multi Session

This recording method enables adding of data using the track-at-once method.

Conventional CDs begin at a CD control area called the lead-in and end at an area called lead-out. A multi session CD is a CD having multiple sessions, with each segment from lead-in to lead-out regarded as a single session.

CD-Extra: The format that records audio (audio CD data) as tracks on session 1, and records data as tracks on session 2.

Mixed CD: In this format, data records as track 1 and audio (audio CD data) records as track 2.

File Formats

With formats other than ISO 9660 level 1 and level 2, folder names or file names may not display correctly.

When naming, be sure to add the file extension MP3 to the file name.

If you put the extension MP3 to a file other than MP3, the unit cannot recognize the file correctly and generates random noise that could damage your speakers.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

The following discs take a longer time to start playback:

- A disc recorded with complicated tree structure.
- A disc recorded in multi session.
- A non-finalized disc, where you can add more data.

Playing a Multi Session Disc

When the first track of the first session is audio CD data only, the audio CD data of the first session plays. Non-audio CD data, MP3 file information (such as track number and time) displays with no sound.

When the first track of the first session is not audio CD data:

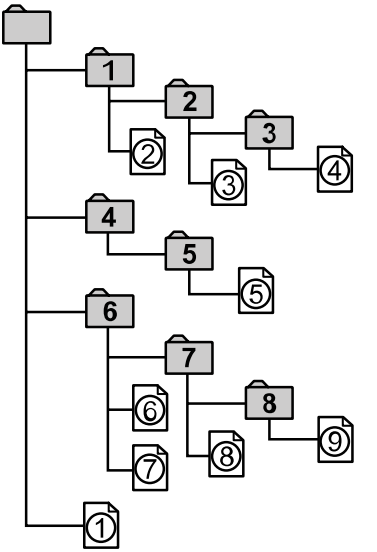
- If an MP3 file is on the disc, the system skips these file and other data. Audio CD data is not recognized.
- If no MP3 file is in the disc, nothing plays. Audio CD data is not recognized.

MP3 Files Playback Order

Note: *The system skips any folder that does not include an MP3 file.*

To specify a desired playback order before the folder or file name, input the order by number (for example, 01 or 02) then record the contents onto a disc. The order differs depending on the writing software.

The playback order of the folders and files are as shown.



ID3 Tag Version 2

The following occurs when an MP3 file containing a tag plays:

- When skipping a portion of a tag (at the beginning of the track) there is no sound output. Skip time changes depending on the tag capacity. Example: At 64 kbytes, it is about 2 seconds (with RealJukebox).
- The displayed elapsed playing time when skipping a portion of the tag is inaccurate. For MP3 files of a bit rate other than 128 kbps, time does not display accurately during playback.
- When an MP3 file is created with MP3 conversion software (such as RealJukebox - a registered trademark of RealNetworks Inc.), the tag generates automatically.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

MP3 Navigation

You can record MP3 tracks on the CD in several ways. You can place them in the root directory like a conventional audio CD, or in folders that may represent categories, such as album, artist, or genre.

The normal playing sequence on CDs with multiple folders is:

- Play the tracks within the root (top level) first.
- Then the tracks in any folder(s) within the root.
- Then move onto the second folder, and so forth.

To navigate to a track:

1. Press the up or down arrow buttons to enter the track list.
2. Navigate the hierarchy using the arrow buttons to select another folder or track (file).
3. Press ***OK*** to select a highlighted track.

MP3 Display Options

When an MP3 disc is playing, limited information encoded in each track displays. Such information normally includes:

- The file name.
- The folder name.
- ID3 information (album or artist name).

The unit normally shows the file name that is playing. To select one of the other items of information, press ***INFO*** repeatedly until the required item appears in the display.

CD Text Display Options

Note: *You can select these display options in the same way as MP3 displays.*

When an audio disc with CD text is playing, limited information encoded in each track displays. Such information normally includes:

- The disc name.
- The artist name.
- The track name.

Ending Compact Disc Playback

To restore radio reception on all units, press ***RADIO***.

Note: *The CD does not eject. The disc pauses at the point where radio reception returned.*

To resume CD playback, press **CD** again.

MEDIA HUB (If Equipped)

Type 1

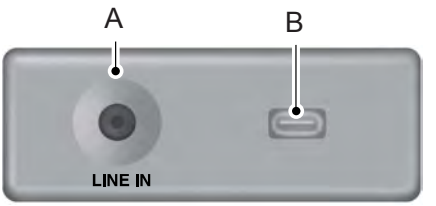


E217515

A LINE IN.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Type 2

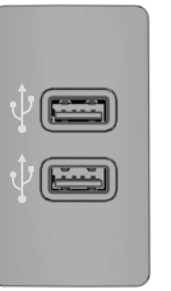


E217516

A LINE IN.

B USB ports.

Type 3



E211463

AUDIO TROUBLESHOOTING

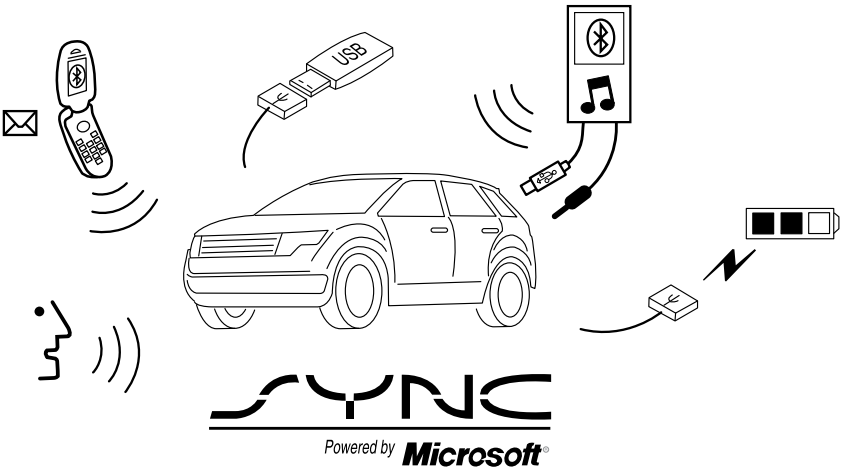
Audio unit display	Rectification
Please check CD	General error message for CD fault conditions, such as cannot read the CD, data-CD inserted, etc. Make sure the disc is loaded correct way up. Clean and re-try, or replace disc with known music disc. If error persists contact your dealer.
CD drive malfunction	General error message for CD fault conditions such as possible mechanism fault.
CD drive high temp.	Ambient temperature too hot – unit will not work until it has cooled down.
IPOD ERROR READING DEVICE	General error message for iPod fault conditions, such as cannot read the data. Ensure iPod is inserted correctly. If error persists contact your dealer.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E142598

SYNC is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone and portable media player.

This allows you to:

- Make and receive calls
- Access and play music from your media player

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

- Use Emergency Assistance and applications, via SYNC Applink *
- Access phonebook contacts and music using voice commands
- Stream music from your connected cell phone
- Select pre-defined text messages (if your device supports this)
- Use the advanced voice recognition system
- Charge your USB device (if your device supports this)

*These features are not available in all markets and may require activation. Available AppLink enabled apps vary by market.

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

Support

For further support, see an authorized dealer. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

Safety Information

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC:

- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Carefully place cords and cables where you cannot step on them or they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. Refer to your device's manual for further information.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorized dealer.

Privacy Information

When a cell phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile that is linked to that cell phone. The system creates the profile to offer you more mobile features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your phonebook, text messages (read and unread) and call history. This will include the history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. If you connect a media player, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cell phone profile, media player index and development log will remain in the system unless deleted. They are generally accessible in your vehicle only when you connect your cell phone or media player. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you complete a master reset to erase all stored information. See **SYNC™** (page 269).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Special equipment is required to access system data. Access to your vehicle's SYNC module is also required. We will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described without consent. Examples where system data can be accessed are for a court order, where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of us. Further privacy information is available. See **SYNC™ Applications and Services** (page 284).

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the steering wheel and focus on what is in front of you.

Initiating a Voice Session



Press the voice button. A list of available voice commands appears in the display.

Global Voice Commands

These voice commands are always available. You can say them at any time.

Global voice commands	
(cancel | exit)	This command ends the voice session. You can also cancel a session by holding the voice button for two or more seconds.
help	This command provides you with hints, examples and instructions.
(main menu | start again)	This command restarts the voice session from the initial starting point.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where; (cancel | exit) appears you say; cancel or exit.

Helpful Hints

- Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.
- Before giving a voice command, wait for the system announcement to finish, followed by a single tone. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.
- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- You can interrupt the system at any time while it is speaking by pressing the voice button. You can cancel a voice session by pressing and holding the voice button.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

System Interaction and Feedback

The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction. You can customize the voice recognition system to provide more or less instruction and feedback.

The default setting is to a higher level of interaction in order to help you learn to use the system. You can change these settings at any time.

Adjusting the Interaction Level



Press the voice button. When prompted, say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
voice settings	
Then either of the following:	
interaction mode novice	Provides more detailed interaction and guidance. (Recommended for first time users.)
interaction mode advanced	Provides less audible interaction and guidance.

Confirmation Prompts

Confirmation prompts are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there is more than one possible response to your request.

To adjust this setting, press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
voice settings	
Then either of the following:	
confirmation prompts off	Make a best guess from the command; you may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.
confirmation prompts on	Clarify your voice command with a short question.

Phone Confirmation

Using phone confirmations, the system asks you to verify before placing any calls.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

To adjust this setting, press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
voice settings	
Then any of the following:	
phone confirmation on	When switched on, this feature prompts you to confirm any voice initiated call command prior to placing the call.
phone confirmation off	The system makes a best guess; you may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.

Changing the Voice Settings

In addition to using voice commands to change the voice settings, you can also use the menu in the audio display.

To change the voice settings press the Menu button then select:

Menu Item
SYNC-Settings
Voice settings

USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR PHONE

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Using privacy mode.
- Dialing a number.
- Redialing.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download are cell phone dependent features. To check your cell phone's compatibility, refer to your device's manual or visit the regional Ford website.

Pairing a Cell Phone For the First Time

Wirelessly pairing your cell phone with the system allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

Note: *You must switch the ignition and radio on.*

Note: *To scroll through the menus, press the up or down arrows on your audio system.*

1. Make sure the Bluetooth feature on your cell phone is switched on before starting the search. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button. When the audio display indicates that no phones are paired, select the option to add.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

3. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your cell phone to start the pairing process.
4. Select SYNC on your cell phone.
5. Wait until the PIN appears on the phone display. Compare the PIN on the phone with the PIN shown in the audio display and accept the request on the phone and the vehicle display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Note: *In some cases the phone will request to enter a PIN. Enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.*

Depending on your cell phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current cell phone as the primary cell phone (the cell phone the system automatically tries to connect with first when you switch the ignition on) or downloading your phonebook.



The information display may show your cell phone's battery charge level and signal strength.

Using Voice Commands



Make sure to switch on your phone's Bluetooth feature before starting the search. See your device's manual if necessary.

Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
(pair ([Bluetooth] device | phone | Bluetooth audio) | add phone)	Follow the instructions on the audio display.

Words in square brackets [ ] are optional and do not have to be spoken for the system to understand the command.

Depending on your phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions, such as setting the current phone as the primary phone (the phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up) and downloading your phonebook.

Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones

Wirelessly pairing your cell phone with the system allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

Note: *You must switch the ignition and radio on.*

Note: *To scroll through the menus, press the up or down arrows on your audio system.*

1. Make sure the Bluetooth feature on your cell phone is switched on before starting the search. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button.
3. Select the option for Bluetooth devices.
4. Press the **OK** button.
5. Select the option to add. This starts the pairing process.
6. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your device to start the pairing process.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

7. Select SYNC on your cell phone.
8. Wait until the PIN appears on the phone display. Compare the PIN on the phone with the PIN shown in the audio display and accept the request on the phone and the vehicle display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Note: *In some cases the phone will request to enter a PIN. Enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.*

The system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current cell phone as the primary cell phone or downloading your phonebook.

Cell Phone Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command
(phone | Blackberry | iPhone)
Then say any of the following:
call (___)
call ___ at home
call ___ ([at] work | [(in | at) [the]] office)
call ___ on (mobile | cell)
call ___ on other
dial [[a] number] [1]
([go to] privacy [on] | transfer to phone | handsfree off) [2]
(hold call [on] | place call on hold) [2]
join (calls | call) [2]
mute call [on] [2]
(mute call off | un-mute call) [2]
(turn ringer on | silent mode off)
(turn ringer off | silent mode [on])
[text] (messages | message) [3]
help

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything, such as a group, artist or song. For example you could say "Play artist The Beetles".

[1] See **Dial** table below.

[2] These commands are only valid while in a phone call.

[3] See the text message table below.

Dial Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say any of the following commands:

Voice Command	Action and Description
Pound	This will add a # symbol to the number or name.
Number	0 (zero) to 9 (nine)
Asterisk or Star	This will add a * symbol to the number or name.
clear	Deletes all entered digits

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Voice Command	Action and Description
(delete | correct)	Deletes the last set of entered digits.
Plus	This will add a + symbol to the number or name.

Note: *To exit dial mode, press and hold the phone button or any button on the audio unit.*

Phonebook Hints

To hear how the SYNC system speaks a name browse phonebook, select a contact and press:

Menu Item
Hear it

Making a Call

Press the voice button and when prompted say either:

Voice Command	Action and Description
call [[a] name]	
dial [[a] number]	SYNC prompts you to say the numbers that you wish to dial. After you say the numbers, the system confirms it.

When the system has stated the number, you say any of the following:

Voice Command	Action and Description
(dial | send)	This initiates the call.
(delete | correct)	To erase the last spoken digit.
clear	To erase all spoken digits.

To end the call, press the end call button on the steering wheel or select the end call option in the audio display and press **OK**.

Receiving a Call

When receiving a call, you can:

- Answer the call by pressing the accept call button on the steering wheel or by selecting the accept call option in the audio display and pressing the **OK** button.
- Reject the call by pressing the reject call button on the steering wheel or by selecting the reject call option in the audio display and pressing the **OK** button.
- Ignore the call by doing nothing.

Cell Phone Options During an Active Call

During an active call, you have extra menu features which become available, for example putting a call on hold.

To access this menu, choose one of the options available at the bottom of the audio display or select the option for more.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
Mic. off	Turn your vehicle's microphone off. To turn the microphone on, select the option again.
Privacy	Switch a call from an active hands-free environment to your cell phone for a more private conversation. When selected, the audio display will indicate the call is private.
Hold	Put an active call on hold. When selected, the audio display will indicate the call is on hold.
Dial a number	Enter numbers using the audio system numeric keypad, for example numbers for passwords.
Join calls	Join two separate calls. The system supports a maximum of three callers on a multi-party or conference call. 1. Select the option for more. 2. Access the desired contact through the system or use voice commands to place the second call. Once actively in the second call, select the option for more. 3. Scroll to the option to join calls and press the **OK** button.
Phonebook	Access your phonebook contacts. 1. Select the option for more. 2. Scroll to the option for phonebook and press the **OK** button. 3. Scroll through your phonebook contacts. 4. Press the **OK** button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 5. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.
Call history	Access your call history log. 1. Select the option for more. 2. Scroll to the option until call history appears. Press the **OK** button. 3. Scroll through your call history options (incoming, outgoing or missed). 4. Press the **OK** button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 5. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Accessing Features Through the Cell Phone Menu

You can access your call history, phonebook, sent text messages as well as access cell phone and system settings. You can also access advanced features such as emergency assistance.

The system attempts to automatically re-download your phonebook and call history each time your cell phone connects to the system. You must turn on the auto download feature if your cell phone supports it.

Note: *This is a cell phone dependent feature.*

1. Press the **PHONE** button to enter the cell phone menu.
2. Select one of the options available.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Dial a number	Dial a number using the audio system numeric keypad.
Redial	Redial the last number called (if available). Press the **OK** button to select.
Phonebook	Access your downloaded phonebook. 1. Press the **OK** button to confirm and enter. You can use the options at the bottom of the screen to quickly access an alphabetical category. You can also use the letters on the keypad to jump in the list. 2. Scroll through your phonebook contacts. 3. Press the **OK** button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 4. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.
Call history	Access any previously dialed, received or missed calls. 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select either incoming calls, outgoing calls or missed calls. Press the **OK** button to make your selection. 3. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.
Speed Dial	Select one of 10 speed dial entries. To set a speed dial entry, go to the phonebook and press and hold one of the numbers on the audio system numeric keypad.
Text messaging	Send, download and delete text messages.
BT Devices	Access the following option for Bluetooth device menu listings:
	Add

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
	Delete
	Conn.
	Discon.
	Master
Phone settings	View various settings and features on your cell phone.

Text Messaging

WARNING

Local laws may prohibit some or all of the text messaging functions while driving. Check your local road rules before using these functions.

The system allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages. The system can also read incoming text messages to you so that you do not have to take your eyes off the road.

Note: *This is a cell phone dependent feature.*

Receiving a Text Message

Note: *This is a phone-dependent feature. Your phone must support downloading text messages using Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.*

Note: *This is a speed-dependent feature and is only available when your vehicle is traveling at 5 km/h or less.*

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the audio display indicates you have a new message.

To hear the message you can say:

Voice command	Action and Description
(listen to | read) ([text] message)	Select this option to have the system read the message to you.

Using the screen you also have the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Ignore	Select this option, or do nothing, and the message goes into your text message inbox.	
View	Select the view option to open the text message. Once selected, you have the ability to have the message read to you, to view other messages. For additional options select:	
	More...	If you select this option, use the arrow button to scroll through the following options:

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description		
		Reply to sender	Press the **OK** button to access, and then scroll through a list of pre-defined messages to send.
		Call sender	Press the **OK** button to call the sender of the message.
		Forward msg.	Press the **OK** button to forward the message to anyone in your phonebook or call history. You can also choose to enter a number.

Sending, Downloading and Deleting Your Text Messages

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select the text messaging option, then press the **OK** button.

Choose from the following:

Menu Item	Action and Description
New	When you select the option to send a text message, a list of pre-defined messages appear in the audio display. Allows you to send a new text message based on a pre-defined set of 15 messages.
View	Allows you to read the full message and in addition provides the option to have the message read out to you by the system. To go to the next message select the more option. This allows you to reply to the sender, call the sender or forward the message.
Delete	Allows you to delete current text messages from the system (not your cell phone). The audio display indicates when all your text messages have been deleted.
More...	Allows you to delete all messages or to manually trigger a download of all unread messages from your cell phone.

Sending a Text Message

1. Select the send option when the desired selection is highlighted in the audio display.
2. Select the confirmation option when the contact appears and press the **OK** button again to confirm when the system asks if you would like to send the message. Each text message is sent with a pre-defined signature.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Note: *You can send text messages two ways. You can chose a contact from your phonebook, call history or by entering a phone number and selecting the text option from the audio display. You can also reply to a received message in the inbox.*

Note: *Only one recipient is allowed per text message.*

Accessing Your Cell Phone Settings

These are cell phone dependent features. Your cell phone settings allow you to access and adjust features such as your ringtone, text message notification, modify your phonebook and set up automatic download.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the phone settings option appears, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set as master	If this option is checked, the system will use this cell phone as the master when there is more than one cell phone paired to the system. This option can be changed for all paired cell phones (not only for the active one) using the Bluetooth devices menu.
Phone status	See the cell phone name, provider name, cell phone number, signal level and battery level. When done, press the left arrow button to return to the cell phone status menu.
Set ringtone	Select which ringtone sounds during an incoming call (one of the system's or your cell phone's). If your cell phone supports in-band ringing, your cell phone's ringtone sounds when you choose the cell phone ringtone option. 1. Press the **OK** button to select and scroll to hear each ringtone. 2. Press the **OK** button to select.
Text msg notify	Have the option of hearing an audible tone to notify you when a text message arrives. Press the **OK** button to turn the audible tone on or off.
Phonebook pref.	Modify the contents of your phonebook, e.g. add, delete, download. Press the **OK** button to select and scroll between the options in the table below.

To modify the phone book preferences, choose from the following:

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
Add contacts	Push the desired contacts on your cell phone. Refer to your device's manual on how to push contacts. Press the **OK** button to add more contacts from your phonebook.
Delete	When a message asking you to delete appears, select the option to confirm. Press the **OK** button to delete the current phonebook and call history. The system takes you back to the menu for phone settings.
Download now	Press the **OK** button to select and download your phonebook to the system.
Auto-download	When automatic download is switched on, any changes, additions or deletions saved in the system since your last download are deleted. When automatic download is switched off, your phonebook will not be downloaded when your cell phone connects to the system. Your phonebook, call history and text messages can only be accessed when your paired cell phone is connected to the system. Check or uncheck this option to automatically download your phonebook each time your cell phone connects to the system. Downloading times are cell phone dependent and quantity dependent.

Bluetooth Devices

This menu provides access to your Bluetooth devices. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options. It allows you to add, connect and delete devices and set a cell phone as primary.

Bluetooth Devices Menu Options

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the Bluetooth device option appears, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Add	Pair additional cell phones to the system. 1. Select the option to add to start the pairing process. 2. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for **SYNC** on your cell phone. Refer to your device's manual if necessary. 3. Select SYNC on your cell phone.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
	4. Wait until the PIN appears on the phone display. Compare the PIN on the phone with the PIN shown in the audio display and accept the request on the phones and the vehicles display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.* 5. When the option to set the cell phone as the primary cell phone appears, select either yes or no. 6. Depending on the functionality of your cell phone, the system may ask you extra questions (for example, if you would like to download your phonebook). Select either yes or no to confirm your response.
Delete	After deleting a cell phone from the list, the cell phone can only be connected again by repeating the full pairing process. Select the delete option and confirm when the system asks to delete the selected device.
Master	The system attempts to connect with the primary cell phone every time you switch the ignition on. When a cell phone is selected as primary, it appears first in the list and is marked with an asterisk. Set a previously paired cell phone as your primary cell phone. Select the master option to confirm the primary cell phone.
Conn.	Connect a previously paired cell phone. You can only have one cell phone connected at a time to use the cell phone functionality. When another cell phone is connected, the previous cell phone will be disconnected from the telephone services. The system allows you to use different Bluetooth devices for the cell phone functionality and the Bluetooth audio music playback feature at the same time.
Discon.	Disconnects the selected cell phone. Select this option and confirm when asked to. After disconnecting a cell phone, it can be connected again without repeating the full pairing process.

*In some cases the phone will request to enter a PIN. Enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

System Settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select the SYNC settings option, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
Bluetooth on	Check or uncheck this option to turn the Bluetooth interface of the system on or off. Select this option then press the **OK** button to change the option's status.
Set defaults	This selection does not erase your indexed information (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices). Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. Return to the factory default settings.
Master reset	Completely erase all information stored on the system (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices) and return to the factory default settings. Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. The display indicates when complete and the system takes you back to the previous menu.
Install on SYNC	Install applications or software updates you have downloaded. Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. There must be a valid SYNC application or update available on the USB thumb drive in order to finish an installation successfully.
System info	Display the system's version numbers as well as its serial number. Press the **OK** button to select.
Voice settings	The voice settings submenu contains various options. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 271).
Browse USB	Browse the actual menu structure of the connected USB device. Press the **OK** button and use the up or down arrows to scroll through the folders and files. Use the left or right arrows to enter and leave a folder. Media content can be directly selected for playback from this menu.

SYNC™ APPLICATIONS AND SERVICES

A list of available applications appears. Each application may have its own specific settings.

Press the **MENU** button to enter the system menu.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Message	Description and Action
SYNC-Apps	Scroll to this option, and then press **OK**.

SYNC Emergency Assistance

WARNINGS

For this feature to work, your mobile phone must be Bluetooth-enabled and compatible with the system.

Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working properly.

Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is on prior to a collision, the system does not attempt to place an emergency call. This could delay the response time, increasing the risk of serious injury or death.

Do not wait for Emergency Assistance to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.

If a crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, the system may contact emergency services through a paired and connected cell phone. For more information about the system and Emergency Assistance, visit the regional Ford website.

Note: *Before selecting this feature, you must read the Emergency Assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.*

Note: *When you switch this feature on or off, that setting applies for all paired cell phones. If you have turned this feature off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch on the ignition, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown, or both.*

Note: *Every cell phone operates differently. While this feature works with most cell phones, some cell phones may experience difficulties using this feature.*

Note: *Make sure you are familiar with the information about airbag deployment. See* ***Supplementary Restraints System*** *(page 21).*

Switching Emergency Assistance On and Off

Press the **MENU** button then select:

Message	Action
SYNC-Apps	Press **OK**.
Emerg. assist	Press **OK**. Select the option you require and press **OK**.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Display Options

If you switch on this feature, a confirmation message appears in the display.

If you switch off this feature, a dialog will appear in the display, which allows you to set a voice reminder.

Off with voice reminder provides a display and voice reminder when your cell phone connects and your vehicle starts.

Off without voice reminder provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder when your cell phone connects.

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.
- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- For India only, if you are using a cell phone equipped with multiple SIMs, make sure that there is a default SIM selected in the outbound call settings of your phone. If not, an emergency call may not be initiated during an Emergency Assistance event, without user interaction. Refer to your cell phone user manual to understand more about outbound call settings.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

Note: *This feature only works in countries or regions where SYNC Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. Visit the regional Ford website for details.*

In the Event of a Crash

Note: *Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off (which may turn on Emergency Assistance). However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone. The system attempts to make an emergency call.*

Before making a call:

- If you do not cancel the call and SYNC makes a successful call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short time window (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system attempts to make an emergency call.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant function button or by pressing the end call button on the steering wheel.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

During a call:

- Emergency Assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.
- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

Note: *While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.*

Note: *During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.*

Note: *It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.*

Note: *It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.*

Note: *The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from SYNC Emergency Assistance.*

Emergency Assistance may not work if:

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a country or region where the SYNC Emergency Assistance cannot place the call. Visit the regional Ford website for details.

Important Information about the Emergency Assistance Feature

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in some countries.

Visit the regional Ford website for the latest details.

Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

SYNC AppLink

The system enables voice and manual control of SYNC AppLink enabled smartphone apps. Once an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and manual controls.

Note: *You must pair and connect your smartphone to SYNC to access AppLink.*

Note: *iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port.*

Note: *Android users need to connect the phone to SYNC using Bluetooth.*

Note: *For information on available apps, supported smartphone devices and troubleshooting tips please visit the Ford website.*

Note: *Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps will work automatically with no setup. Other apps will want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle.*

To Access Using the SYNC Menu

Scroll through the list of available applications and press **OK** to select an app. Once an app is running through SYNC, press the right arrow button to access the app menu. You can access various app features from here, for example thumbs up and thumbs down. Press the left arrow button to exit the app menu.

Press the **MENU** button then select:

Message	Description and Action
SYNC-Apps	
Mobile Apps	Scroll to this option, and then press **OK**.
Find new Apps	Select this option if the app required is not listed.

Note: *If a SYNC AppLink compatible app cannot be found, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.*

To Access Using Voice Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Command	Description and Action
mobile (apps | applications)	Say the name of the application after the tone. The application will start. While an app is running through SYNC, you can press the voice button and speak commands specific to the app.

The following voice commands are always available:

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Command	Description and Action
[main menu] help	Use this command to hear a list of available voice commands.
mobile (apps | applications)	The system will prompt you to say the name of the app to start it.
list [mobile] (apps | applications)	The system will list all of the currently available mobile apps.
find [new] [mobile] (apps | applications)	The system will search your connected mobile device for SYNC compatible apps.
(quit | exit | close)	Use this command followed by the name of the app.

You can also say the name of any SYNC compitable app to start it on SYNC. To see a list of the available voice commands for an app, say the name of an app followed by help. For example you could say "Spotify help".

Enabling and Disabling Push Notifications

Some apps can send push notifications. A push notification is an alert from an app running in the background and is delivered by voice, pop up or both. This may be particularly useful for news or location based apps.

Press the **MENU** button then select:

Message	Description and Action
SYNC-Apps	
Mobile Apps	
SYNC-Settings	
All Apps	If push notifications are supported, this setting will be listed. Select to enable or disable the feature as required.

Enabling SYNC Mobile Apps

To use the system you must consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates, using the data plan associated with the connected device.

Data is sent to Ford in the United States through the connected device. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place automatically.

Note: *You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Note: *Standard data rates will apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.*

App Status

You can view the current status of an app in the settings menu. There are three possible statuses:

Message	Description and Action
Update needed	The system has detected a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.
Up-to-date	No update is required.
Updating...	The system is trying to receive an update.

Options in the settings menu:

Message	Description and Action
Request Update	If an update is required and you want to manually request the update, for example when you are in a Wi-Fi hotspot.
Disable Updates	Select this option to disable automatic updates.

App Permissions

Permissions are divided by groups. You can grant these group permissions individually. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu.

When you launch an app using SYNC, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example:

- To allow your vehicle to provide vehicle information to the app including, but not limited to: Fuel level, fuel consumption, engine speed, battery voltage, odometer, VIN, external temperature, gear position, tire pressure, ambient temperature, date and time.
- To allow your vehicle to provide driving characteristic information, including, but not limited to: MyKey, seatbelt status, engine speeds, braking events, brake pedal switch, acceleration, accelerator pedal position, clutch pedal switch, trip length, trip time, trip cost, percent engine on time, and percent of time at speed.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

- To allow your vehicle to provide location information, including: GPS and speed.
- To allow the app to send push notifications using the vehicle display and voice capabilities while running in a background state.

Note: *You will only need to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC.*

Note: *We are not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve us to provide to an app.*

USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR MEDIA PLAYER

You can access and play music from your media player through your vehicle's speaker system using the system's media menu or voice commands. You can also sort and play your music by specific categories, for example artist or albums.

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any media player including: iPod, Zune, Plays from device players, and most USB drives. SYNC also supports audio formats, for example MP3, WMA, WAV and ACC.

Confirm that the USB device has been formatted correctly and has the following specifications:

- USB 2.0.
- File format must be FAT16/32.

Note: *NTFS file format is not supported.*

The format of the audio files on the USB device must be:

- MP3.
- Non DRM protected WMA.
- WAV.
- AAC.

Connecting Your Media Player to the USB Port

Note: *If your media player has a power switch, make sure you switch on the device.*

To Connect Using Voice Commands

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Description and Action
(USB [stick] | iPod | MP3 [player])	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands. Refer to the media voice commands.

Words in brackets [ ] are optional and do not have to be spoken for the system to understand the command. For example, for where (USB [stick] | iPOD | MP3 [player]) appears, you can say USB or USB stick.

To Connect Using the System Menu

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press the **Media** button (next to the audio display) until an initializing message appears in the display.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	Depending on how many media files are on your connected device, an indexing message may appear in the display. When indexing is complete, the screen returns to the playback menu.

Choose from the following:

Message
Play all
Playlists
Songs
Artists
Albums
Genres
Browse USB
Reset USB
Exit

What's Playing?

At any time during playback, you can press the voice button and ask the system what is playing. The system reads the metadata tags of the current track, if populated.

Media Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Description and Action
(USB [stick] | iPod | MP3 [player])	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where; (what's | what is) appears you say; what's or what is.

You must say any of the voice commands that appear outside of open and close brackets. For example, where; who plays this (what's | what is) playing, you must say; who plays this (what's or what is) playing.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Then any of the following:

Voice Command	
play	
pause	
play all	
play [artist]	*
play [album]	*
play [genre]	*
[play] next track	
play [playlist]	*
[play] previous track	
play [song | track | title | file]	*
Repeat Off	
repeat one [on]	
(browse | search | show) album	
(browse | search | show) artist	
(browse | search | show) genre	
(browse | search | show) playlist	
(browse | search | show) all (album | albums)	
(browse | search | show) all (artist | artists)	
(browse | search | show) all (genre | genres)	
(browse | search | show) all (playlist | playlists)	
(browse | search | show) all (song | songs | title | titles | file | files | track | tracks)	
shuffle [all] [on]	
shuffle off	

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Voice Command
Similar Music
((who's | who is) this | who plays this | (what's | what is) playing [now] | (what | which) (song | track | artist) is this | (who's | who is) playing | (what's | what is) this)

* This voice command is not available until indexing is complete.

Voice Command Guide

Voice Command	Description and Action
(browse | search | show) genre	The system searches all the data from your indexed music and if available, begins to play the chosen type of music.
[play] (similar music | more like this)	The system compiles a playlist and then plays similar music to what is currently playing from the USB port using indexed metadata information.
(browse | search | show) artist	The system searches for a specific artist, track or album from the music indexed through the USB port.
(browse | search | show) album	The system searches for a specific artist, track or album from the music indexed through the USB port.

The system is also capable of playing music from your cell phone through Bluetooth.

To switch the Bluetooth audio on, use the **MEDIA** button (next to the audio display) or **Source** button, or press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Description and Action
Bluetooth Audio	

Then any of the following:

Voice Command	Description and Action
pause	
play	
[play] next track	
[play] previous track	

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Media Menu Features

The media menu allows you to select how to play your music, for example by artist, genre, shuffle or repeat, and to find similar music or reset the index of your USB devices.

Press **AUX** to select USB playback.

Message	Description and Action
Options	This will enter the media menu.

Then any of the following:

Message	Description and Action
Shuffle	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Repeat track	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Similar music	You can play similar types of music to the current playlist from the USB port. The system uses the metadata information of each track to compile a playlist. The system then creates a new list of similar tracks and then begins playing. Each track must have the metadata tags populated for this feature. With certain playing devices, if your metadata tags are not populated, the tracks will not be available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. However, if you place these tracks onto your playing device in mass storage device mode they are available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. The system places unknowns into any unpopulated metadata tag.
Reset SYNC USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

Accessing Your USB Song Library

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press **MEDIA** button (next to the audio display) to select USB playback.

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	This menu allows you to select and play your media files by artist, album, genre, playlist and track or even to browse what is on your USB device.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

If there are no media files to access, the display indicates there is no media. If there are media files, you have the following options to scroll through and select:

Message	Description and Action
Play all	Play all indexed media files from your playing device one at a time in numerical order.* 1. Press **OK** to select. The first track title appears in the display.
Playlists	Access your playlists from formats, ASX, M3U, WPL or MTP.* 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired playlist, and then press **OK**.
Songs	Search for and play a specific indexed track. * 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired track, and then press **OK**.
Artists	Sort all indexed media files by artist. Once selected, the system lists and then plays all artists and tracks alphabetically.* 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired artist, and then press **OK**.
Albums	Sort all indexed media files by albums.* 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired albums, and then press **OK**.
Genres	Sort indexed music by genre type.* 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired genre, and then press **OK**.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	Browse all supported media files on your media player connected to the USB port. You can only view media files that are compatible with SYNC; other saved files are not visible. 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to browse indexed media files on your flash drive, and then press **OK**.
Reset USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete, you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

* You can use the buttons at the bottom of the audio display to jump to a certain alphabetical category quickly. You can also use the letters on the numeric keypad to jump in the list.

Bluetooth Devices and System Settings

You can access these menus using the audio display. See **Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player** (page 291).

SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

To check your cell phone's compatibility, visit the regional Ford website.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
A lot of background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your cell phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure that the microphone for SYNC is not set to off.
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
		Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.
The system says "Phonebook downloaded" but my SYNC phonebook is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your cell phone's capability.	Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to your cell phone's memory.
		Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.
I am having trouble connecting my cell phone to SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Try deleting your device from SYNC and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again.
		Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your cell phone.
		Update your cell phone's firmware.
		Switch off the auto download setting.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
	iPhone	• Go to your cell phone's Settings. • Go to the Bluetooth Menu.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
		• Make sure the connection status shows Not Connected. • Press the blue circle to enter the next menu. • Turn on Show Notifications. • Turn on Sync Contacts. Your iPhone is now set up to forward incoming text messages to SYNC. Repeat these steps for every other Sync vehicle you are connected to. Your iPhone will only forward incoming text messages to SYNC if it is unlocked. Replying to text messages using SYNC is not supported by iPhone. Text messages from WhatsApp and Facebook Messenger are not supported.
Audible text messages do not work on my cell phone.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Your cell phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.
		Access the text messaging menu of SYNC to see if your cell phone supports the feature. Press the **PHONE** button and then scroll and select the option for text messaging, then press **OK**.
	This is a cell phone limitation.	Because each cell phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific cell phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between cell phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

USB and media issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	Try switching off the device, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.
		Make sure you correctly insert the USB cable in to the device and your vehicle's USB port.
		Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
SYNC does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a device-dependent feature.	Make sure you connect the device to SYNC and press play on your device.
	The device is not connected.	
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version.
	The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

USB and media issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
When I connect my iPhone or iPod Touch through the USB and Bluetooth Audio at the same time, I sometimes do not hear any sound.	This is a device limitation.	From the iPhone or iPod Touch music now playing screen, select the audio device airplay icon at the very bottom of your iPhone or iPod Touch screen.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through Bluetooth Audio, select SYNC.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through USB, select Dock Connector.

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
		Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	The microphone for the system is either in your rear view mirror or in the headliner just above the windshield.
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Say the song or artist exactly as the system saved it. If you say, "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation.
		Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
		If the song titles are in capital letters, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A".

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
	The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.	Do not use special characters in the title, as the system does not recognize them.
SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands at the beginning of the cell phone section.
		You can also use the cell phone and media suggestion lists to get a list of possible suggestions when the system cannot fully understand you. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 271).
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Make sure you are saying the name exactly as the system saved it. For example, if the contact name is Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson".
		The system works better if you list full names such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe".
	Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar or they may contain special characters.	Do not use special characters such as 123 or ICE as the system does not recognize them.
	Your phonebook contacts may be in capital letters.	If the contacts are in capital letters, you have to spell them. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".
The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone.
		Helpful Hint: You can select your contact manually. Press **PHONE**. Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.
The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.	SYNC uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.	SYNC uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.
		SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").
My previous Bluetooth voice control system allowed me to control the radio, CD, and climate control systems. Why can I not control these systems with SYNC?	The focus of SYNC is to control your mobile devices and the content stored on them.	SYNC offers significant capability beyond the previous system such as dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

General		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the SYNC language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts).	SYNC does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.	SYNC only supports four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC remains in the current active language.
		SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
AppLink Mobile Applications: When I select "Find New Apps", SYNC does not find any applications.	An AppLink capable phone is not connected to SYNC.	Ensure you have a compatible smartphone; an Android with OS 2.3 or higher or an iPhone 3GS or newer with iOS 5.0 or higher. Additionally, ensure your phone is paired and connected to SYNC in order to find AppLink-capable apps on your device. iPhone users must also connect to SYNC's USB port with an Apple USB cable.
My phone is connected, but I still cannot find any apps.	AppLink-enabled apps are not installed and running on your mobile device.	Ensure you have downloaded and installed the latest version of the app from your phone's app store. Ensure the app is running on your phone. Some apps require you to register or login on the app on the phone before using them with AppLink. Also, some may have a "Ford SYNC" setting, so check the app's settings menu on the phone.
My phone is connected, my app(s) are running, but I still cannot find any apps.	Sometime apps do not properly close and re-open their connection to SYNC, over ignition cycles, for example.	Closing and restarting apps may help SYNC find the application if you cannot discover it inside the vehicle. On an Android device, if apps have an 'Exit' or 'Quit' option, select that and then restart the app. If the app does not have that option, you can also manually "Force Close" the app by going to the phone's settings menu, selecting 'Apps.' then finding the particular app and choosing 'Force stop'. Don't forget to restart the app afterwards, then select "Find New Apps" on SYNC.
		On an iPhone with iOS7+, to force close an app, double tab the home button then swipe up on the app to close it. Tap the home button again, then select the app again to restart it. After a few seconds, the app should then appear in SYNC's Mobile App's Menu.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
My Android phone is connected, my app(s) are running, I restarted them, but I still cannot find any apps.	There is a Bluetooth bug on some older versions of the Android OS that may cause apps that were found on your previous vehicle drive to not be found again if you have not turned off Bluetooth.	Reset the Bluetooth on your phone by turning it off and then turning Bluetooth back on. If you are in your vehicle, SYNC should be able to automatically re-connect to your phone if you press the "Phone" button.
My iPhone is connected, my app is running, I restarted the app but I still cannot find it on SYNC.	The USB connection to SYNC may need to be reset.	Unplug the USB cable from the phone, wait a moment, and plug the USB cable back in to the phone. After a few seconds, the app should appear in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu. If not, "Force Close" the application and restart it.
I have an Android phone. I found and started my media app on SYNC, but there is no sound or the sound is very low.	The Bluetooth volume on the phone may be low.	Try increasing the Bluetooth volume of the device by using the device's volume control buttons which are most often found on the side of the device.
I can only see some of the AppLink apps running on my phone listed in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu.	Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth ports apps can use to connect. If you have more AppLink apps on your phone than the number of available Bluetooth ports, you will not see all of your apps listed in SYNC's mobile apps menu.	Force close or uninstall the apps you do not want SYNC to find. If the app has a "Ford SYNC" setting, disable that setting in the app's settings menu on the phone.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Getting to Know Your System

The SYNC 3 system allows you to interact with a variety of features using the touchscreen and voice commands.

Using the Touchscreen

To operate the touchscreen, you can simply touch the item or option that you want to select. The button changes color when you select it.

The SYNC 3 layout allows you to quickly select the feature you wish to use.



Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description
A	Status Bar	This bar displays icons and messages pertaining to current system activities including climate settings, voice commands and phone functions such as text messages.
B	Home	This button is available on the main screens. Pressing it takes you to the home screen view.
C	Clock	This shows the current time. You can set the clock manually or have it controlled by the vehicle's GPS location. See **Settings** (page 347).
D	Outside Temperature	This displays the current outside temperature.
E	Feature Bar	You can touch any of the buttons on this bar to select a feature.

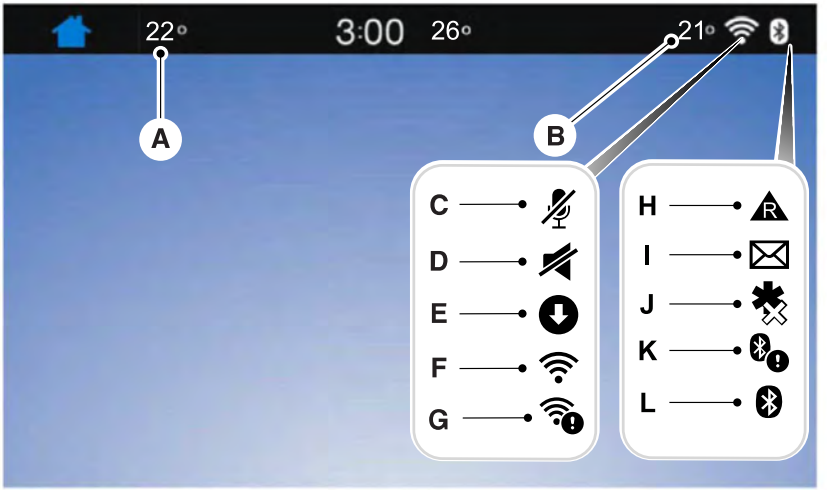
The touchscreen allows you quick access to all of your comfort, navigation (if equipped), communication and entertainment options. Using the status and feature bar you can quickly select the feature you want to use.

Note: *Your system is equipped with a feature that allows you to access and control audio features for 60 minutes after you switch the ignition off (and no doors open).*

The Status Bar

Additional icons also display in the status bar depending on market, vehicle options and current operation. If a feature is not active, the icon does not display. Certain icons may move to the left or right depending on what options are active.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing



E237709

Callout	Item	Description
A	Left Temperature	For left-hand drive vehicles: This shows the temperature selected for this area through the climate control system. For right-hand drive vehicles: When the passenger's temperature has been adjusted and is no longer linked to the driver's temperature, it displays here. If Dual is turned off and the temperatures are linked, the passenger's temperature does not display.
B	Right Temperature	For left-hand drive vehicles: When the passenger's temperature has been adjusted and is no longer linked to the driver's temperature, it displays here. If Dual is turned off and the temperatures are linked, the passenger's temperature does not display. For right-hand drive vehicles: This shows the temperature selected for this area through the climate control system.
C	Microphone Mute	This icon displays when you phone's microphone is muted. A caller cannot hear you.
D	Mute	This icon displays when the audio system is muted.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Callout	Item	Description
E	Download	This icon appears when the system has received a software update. Pressing the icon shows more details about the new software.
F	Wi-Fi	This icon appears if a Wi-Fi network is connected.
G	Wi-Fi in Range	An available Wi-Fi network is within range.
H	Roaming	This icon displays when your cell phone is roaming.
I	Text Message	This icon displays when you receive a text message on your phone.
J	Emergency Assistance	This icon displays when Emergency Assistance is set to off and your phone is connected to SYNC.
K	Bluetooth Alert	The Bluetooth alert icon displays when there is an active Bluetooth alert.
L	Bluetooth	This icon displays to show an active Bluetooth connection.

Messages may also appear in the status bar to provide you with notifications. You can select the message to view the associated feature.

Feature Bar

Feature Bar Item	Functions
Audio	Allows you to control the media playing in your vehicle. You can control all audio features including AM and FM radio, CDs, and media streaming over a Bluetooth device or through a USB connection.
Climate (If equipped)	Allows you to adjust the temperature, fan speed and airflow within the vehicle.
Phone	Allows you to make calls, receive calls, and access the phonebook of your connected device.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Feature Bar Item	Functions
Nav (If equipped)	Allows you to see your vehicle's location on a virtual road map, get driving directions to your destination and find points of interest along your route.
Apps	Connect and control SYNC 3 compatible apps running on your iPhone or android device. If you have a hybrid vehicle, this is where you find the Hybrid vehicle Power Flow information.
Settings	You can customize your system with various settings for the touchscreen display, feature preferences, and how you want to interact with your vehicle.

Cleaning the Touchscreen

You can remove fingerprints with a dry, clean, soft cloth.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

Note: *Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.*

Note: *Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.*

Using Voice Recognition

Using voice commands allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings).

The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request.

When using voice commands, words and icons may appear in the status bar indicating the status of the voice command session. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 320).

Accessing and Adjusting Modes Through Your Vehicle Information Display (If Equipped)

Depending on your vehicle and selected options, you may be able to control some of the features through the information display. You can use your steering wheel controls to view and make minor adjustments to active modes without taking your hands off the wheel. These features may display in the center of the screen or on the side, depending on your vehicle and options.

For left hand drive vehicles these features display in the right-hand display.

For right hand drive vehicles these features display in the left-hand display.

Use the **OK** and arrow buttons on your steering wheel to scroll through the available modes.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

The selection menu expands and different options appear.

- Press the up and down arrows to scroll through the modes.
- Press the right arrow to enter the mode, use the left arrow to exit the mode.
- Press the up and down arrows to make adjustments within the chosen mode.
- Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

For example, you may be able to adjust the following in the information display:

Option	Information			
Audio	Information for current audio playing.			
	Select source.			
Navigation	View current road and speed limit (if information is available).			
	View current route, next turn, time to your destination, distance to destination and cancel route.			
(if equipped)	If you do not have an active navigation route programed, the compass is shown.			
Phone	**If you are not on a call, a call can be made by selecting:**			
	All calls	Incoming calls	Outgoing calls	Missed calls
	If you are on a call, the call information is displayed on the information display.			
	If you are receiving a call, you can accept it by selecting **OK** on the right-hand steering wheel controls.			

Note: *If your vehicle is not equipped with navigation, compass appears in the display instead of navigation. If you press the right arrow to go into the compass menu, you can see the compass graphic. The compass displays the direction in which the vehicle is traveling, not true direction (for example, if the vehicle is traveling west, the middle of the compass graphic displays west; north displays to the left of west though its true direction is to the right of west).*

Using the Steering Wheel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you can use different controls on your steering wheel to interact with the touchscreen system in different ways.

VOL: Control the volume of audio output.

Mute: Mute the audio output.

Voice: Press to start a voice session. Press again to stop the voice prompt and immediately begin speaking. Press and hold to end a voice session.

SEEK NEXT:

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets.
- While in USB, Bluetooth Audio or CD mode, press to seek between songs or press and hold to fast seek.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

SEEK PREVIOUS:

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets.
- While in USB, Bluetooth Audio or CD mode, press to seek between songs or press and hold to fast seek.

PHONE ACCEPT: Press to answer a call or switch between calls.

PHONE REJECT: Press to end a call or reject an incoming call.

Note: *On some models,* ***SEEK NEXT*** *may be combined with* ***PHONE REJECT*** *and* ***SEEK PREVIOUS*** *may be combined with* ***PHONE ACCEPT.***

See **Steering Wheel** (page 39).

Using Your Bezel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you may also have these controls on your instrument panel:

- **Power:** Switch the audio system on and off.
- **VOL:** Control the volume of playing audio.
- **Seek** and **Tune:** Use as you normally would in audio modes.
- **Eject:** Eject a CD from the audio system.
- **SOURCE** or **MEDIA**: Press repeatedly to advance through available media modes.
- **SOUND:** Press to access the Sound menu where you can adjust sound and other audio settings.
- **DISP:** Switch the display on or off. You can also touch the screen to switch the display back on.
- **Temperature, fan and climate control buttons:** Control the temperature, fan speed or settings of the climate control system. See **SYNC™ 3** (page 307).

Emergency Assistance

WARNINGS

Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is on prior to a collision, the system does not attempt to place an emergency call. This could delay the response time, increasing the risk of serious injury or death.

Do not wait for Emergency Assistance to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.

Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working properly.

Note: *The SYNC Emergency Assistance feature must be set on before the incident.*

Note: *The SYNC Emergency Assistance feature only operates in territories that are supporting the feature.*

Note: *Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice later in this section for important information.*

Note: *If any user sets Emergency Assistance to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If Emergency Assistance is switched off and the phone is connected to SYNC, an icon displays on the status bar.*

Note: *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC Emergency Assistance works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

If a crash deploys an airbag (excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts [if equipped]) or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing Emergency number through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. You can learn more about the Emergency Assistance feature, by visiting:

Website
www.fordsync.com

For important information about airbag deployment and the fuel pump shut-off please see the Supplementary Restrains and Roadside Emergencies sections of your owner manual.

To switch Emergency Assistance on and off please view the settings information. See **Settings** (page 347).

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The Emergency Assistance feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in a territory where Emergency Assistance is supported.

In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes will deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (the triggers for Emergency Assistance). If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC will search for and try to connect to a previously paired cell phone; SYNC will then attempt to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial Emergency.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call Emergency, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the Emergency operator, and then the occupant(s) in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all Emergency systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

Emergency Assistance May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to Emergency Assistance may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to Emergency operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist Emergency operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch the feature on.

Safety Information

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. Have an authorized dealer check your vehicle.
- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's user guide for further information.
- For your safety, some SYNC 3 functions are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle is traveling at speeds under 5 km/h. Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC 3.

Speed-restricted Features

Some features of this system may be too difficult to use while your vehicle is moving so they are restricted from use unless your vehicle is stationary.

- Screens crowded with information, such as Point of Interest reviews and ratings, movie times or ski conditions.
- Any action that requires you to use a keyboard is restricted, such as entering a phonebook contact or editing information.
- All lists are limited so the user can view fewer entries (such as phone contacts or recent phone call entries).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

See the following chart for more specific examples:

Restricted features	
Cellular Phone	Pairing a Bluetooth phone.
	Browsing of list entries is limited for phone contacts and recent phone calls.
System Functionality	Editing the keypad code.
	Enabling Valet Mode.
	Editing settings while the rear view camera or active park assist are active.
Wi-Fi	Editing Wi-Fi settings.
	Editing the list of wireless networks.
	Connecting to a new Wi-Fi network.
Text Messages	Viewing received text messages.
Navigation (if equipped)	Using the keyboard to enter a destination.
	Adding or editing Navigation Favorites entries or Avoid Areas.

Creating a SYNC Owner Account

Why do I need a SYNC owner account?

- Essential for keeping up with the latest software and connected features.
- Access to customer support for any questions you may have.
- Maintain account permissions.

Visit the website to sign up and register.

Website
www.fordsync.com

Updating Your System

You can choose to download the update onto a USB drive or use Wi-Fi to deliver automatic updates.

USB Updates

To use the USB update you need to log into your owner account and visit the SYNC software update page.

Website
www.fordsync.com

The website notifies you if an update is available. You can then select to download the update.

You will need an empty USB drive. Please check the website for minimum requirements. Once you have inserted the USB drive into your computer, choose to start the download. Follow the instructions provided to download the files to the USB drive.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

The installation of most files occurs in the background, and does not interrupt your use of the system. Navigation (if equipped) updates cannot be installed in the background, because the files are too large.

To install the update in your vehicle, remove anything that is plugged in the USB ports and plug in the USB drive containing the update. When the USB drive is plugged in, the installation should begin immediately. After a successful installation, the update is available the next time the vehicle is started.

When the installation is complete, take the USB drive back to the computer to report the update. Log into your owner account and return to the SYNC software update page and confirm that you have installed the update. Insert the USB drive used for the update into your computer and choose to report your update. The website updates your records to reflect your current software version.

Updating Over Wi-Fi

To update your System over Wi-Fi your vehicle must be within the range of a Wi-Fi access point. Data rates may apply.

To connect your system to Wi-Fi, select:

Menu Item	
Settings	
Wi-Fi	
Available Wi-Fi Networks	You can then select your Wi-Fi network. You may have to enter the security code if the network is secured. The system confirms when it has connected to the network.

You must also give the system permission to update automatically. Upon vehicle delivery, the System asks you if you would like to use the automatic update feature. If you agree to automatic updates, you can press OK to confirm. If this selection does not appear upon vehicle delivery you can access it through the General Settings. See **Settings** (page 347). You can also perform a master reset. See **SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting** (page 359).

If you would like to switch this feature on later, select:

Menu Item	
Settings	
General	
Automatic System Updates	From this menu, you can enable automatic updates. If you have not done so already, the system prompts you to set up a Wi-Fi connection when you enable this feature.

When Wi-Fi and automatic updates are enabled, your system checks for software updates periodically. If a new version is available, it downloads at that time. Software downloads can take place for up to 30 minutes after you have switched your vehicle off. The updates do not interrupt the normal use of your SYNC 3 system. If a download does not complete for any reason, the download continues where it left off at the next Wi-Fi connected opportunity. Upon activation of an update, a banner displays on the touchscreen indicating the system update. Select the icon to see more detail. This icon displays for two ignition cycles.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

To switch this feature off:

Menu Item	
Settings	
General	
Automatic System Updates	In this menu selection, you can change the selection for automatic updates to OFF.

Support

For further support, contact an authorized dealer. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

Privacy Information

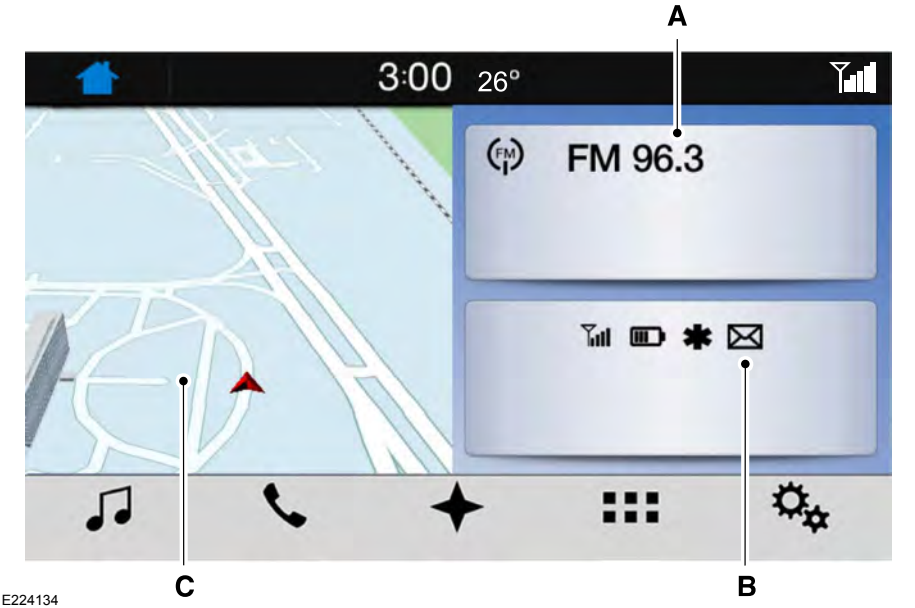
When a cell phone connects to SYNC, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The system creates the profile to offer you more mobile features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your phonebook, text messages (read and unread) and call history. This includes the history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. If you connect a media player, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. Use the log profile and other system data to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cell phone profile, media player index and development log remain in the system unless deleted. They are generally accessible in your vehicle only when you connect your cell phone or media player. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you complete a master reset to erase all stored information. You can find more information about the Master Reset in General Settings. See **Settings** (page 347).

Special equipment is required to access system data. Access to your vehicle's SYNC module is also required. We will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described without consent. Examples where we can access system data are for a court order, where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of us. Further privacy information is available.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

HOME SCREEN



Item	Tile	Home screen display
A	Audio	Shows the active media source. If your vehicle does not have navigation, this space contains the compass.
B	Phone	The name of the connected phone appears on the screen. The status of the phone features also appear. This includes signal strength, battery charge, Emergency Assistance setting state (On or Off), new text messages and roaming.
C	Navigation *	This map displays your current location or current route in real time. When you have navigation active you can see the next turn on your route. If your vehicle does not have navigation, this space contains the audio information.

* If equipped.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

You can touch any of the feature displays to access that feature.

Anytime you select the home button, the system returns you to this screen.

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

The SYNC 3 system allows you to use voice commands, to control features like audio and climate controls. By using voice commands, you can keep your hands on the wheel and your eyes on the road.

You can access each feature controlled by SYNC 3 through a variety of commands.



To activate the SYNC 3 voice commands push the voice button on the steering wheel and wait for the prompt.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it can be the name of anything, such as artist, the name of contact or number. The context and the description of the command tell you what to say for this dynamic option.

There are some commands that work for every feature, these commands are:

Voice Command	Action and Description
Main Menu	Brings you to the main menu.
Go back	Returns you to the previous screen.
Cancel	Ends the voice session.
List of Commands	Gives you a list of possible voice commands.
___ List of Commands	You can name any feature and the system gives a list of commands available for the feature. For example, you could say:
	Phone List of Commands
	Navigation List of Commands (if equipped)
Next Page	You can use this command to view the next page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Previous Page	You can use this command to view the previous page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Help	Gives you available commands you can use on the current screen.

Included here are some of the most popular commands for each SYNC 3 feature.

Audio Voice Commands

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for audio voice commands it can be a radio frequency number, or the name of an artist, album, song or a genre.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

To control the media features, press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice command	Description
AM ___ FM ___	Allows you to tune to a specific FM or AM frequency such as "88.7 FM" or "1580 AM".
Bluetooth Audio	Allows you to listen to music on your Bluetooth-connected device.
USB	Allows you to listen to music on your USB connected device.
Play Genre ___ Play Playlist ___ Play Artist ___ Play Album ___ Play Podcast ___ Play Song ___ Play Audiobook ___	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, song or a genre to listen to that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example, you could say "Play artist, The Beatles" or "Play song, Penny Lane".
Browse ___	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, or a genre to browse by that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example you can say "Browse The Beatles" or "Browse folk".

Climate Voice Commands (If Equipped)

You can control the temperature of the vehicle using voice commands.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for climate voice commands it can be the desired degrees for the temperature setting.

To adjust the temperature, say:

Voice command	Description
Climate Set Temperature ___	Adjust the temperature between 15ºC-30ºC.
Climate Help	

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Phone Voice Commands

Pairing a Phone

You can use voice commands to connect your Bluetooth-enabled phone to the system.

To pair your phone, press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice command	Description
Pair Phone	Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the pairing process. See **Settings** (page 347).

Making Calls

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for phone voice commands it can be the name of the contact you wish to call or the digits you want to dial.

Press the voice button and say a command similar to the following:

Voice command	Description
Call ___	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook such as "Call Jenny".
Call ___ at ___	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location such as "Call Jenny at Home".
Dial ___	Allows you to dial a specific number such as “Dial 867-5309”.

Please make sure that you are saying the contact name exactly as it appears in your contact list.

Once you have provided the digits of the phone number, you can say the following commands:

Voice Command	Description
<0-9>	If the full number was not entered with the first command, you can continue saying the number.
Dial	Tells SYNC 3 to make the phone call.
Delete	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the last block of digits stated.
Clear	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the entire number.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Text Message Voice Commands

To access text message options, press the voice button and say:

Voice command	Description
Text Messages	
Listen to Message	
Listen to text message ___	You can say the number of the message you would like to hear.
Reply to Message	

Navigation Voice Commands (If Equipped)

Setting a Destination

You can use any of the following commands to set a destination or find a point of interest.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for navigation voice commands it can be a POI category or an address.

You can find an address, a point of interest (POI), or search for points of interest by category:

Voice command	Description
Find an Address	Allows you to enter the address search functionality.
Find a ___	State the name of the POI category you would like to search for such as "Find restaurants".
Find POI	Allows you to enter the POI search functionality.
Find Intersection	Allows you to enter the intersection search functionality.
Destination Nearest ___	State the name of the POI category you would like to search for nearby such as "Destination nearest restaurants".
Destination Previous Destination	Allows you to see a list of your previous destinations.
Destination Home	Allows you to route to your home address.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

In addition, you can say these commands when a route is active:

Voice command	Description
Cancel Route	Cancels the current route.
Detour	Allows you to select an alternate route.
Repeat Instruction	Repeats the last guidance prompt.
Show Route	Displays the active route.
Where Am I	Provides current location.
Zoom in	Allows you to zoom in on the map.
Zoom out	Allows you to zoom out from the map.

Mobile App Voice Commands (If Equipped)

The following voice commands are always available:

Voice command	Description
Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will prompt you to say the name of an app to start it on SYNC 3.
List Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will list all of the currently available Mobile Apps.
Find New Apps	SYNC 3 will search and connect to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device.

There are also voice commands that you can use when app(s) are connected to SYNC 3:

Voice command	Description
<App Name>	At any time, you can say the name of a mobile app to start the mobile app on SYNC 3.
<App Name> Help	SYNC 3 will list the available voice commands for the specified app if the app is running on SYNC 3.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Voice Settings Commands

You can say the following commands to access the voice settings:

Voice command	Description
Voice Settings	Allows you to enter the voice settings functionality.
Interaction Mode Standard	Sets standard prompting with longer prompts.
Interaction Mode Advanced	Sets advanced prompting with shorter prompts.
Phone Confirmation On	Allows the system to confirm before making a phone call.
Phone Confirmation Off	The system does not confirm before placing a call.
Voice Command Lists On	The system displays a short list of available commands.
Voice Command Lists Off	The system does not display the list of commands.

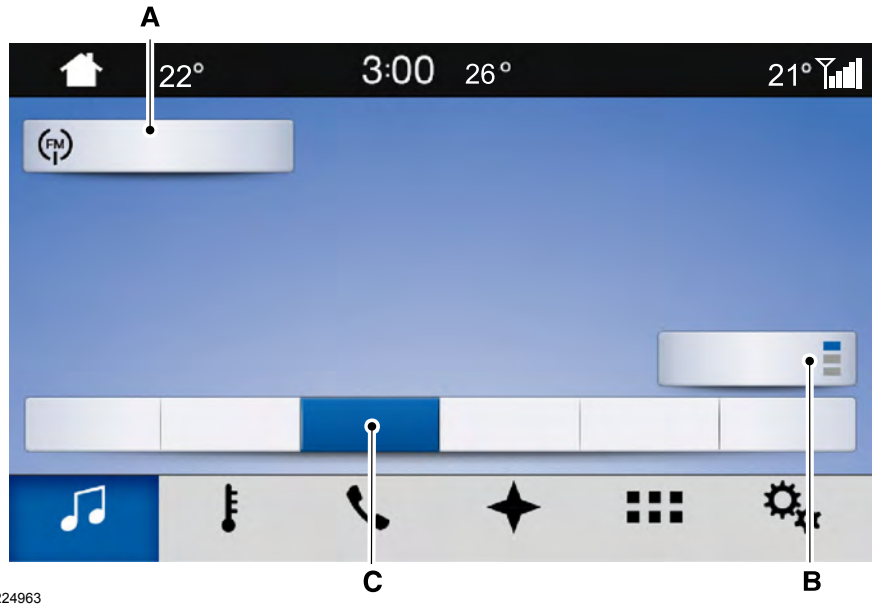
You can use the volume control to adjust the volume of the system voice prompts. While prompt is active, adjust the volume control up or down to your desired setting.

Note: *Depending on the current climate control settings, the fan speed may automatically go down while issuing voice commands or while making and receiving phone calls via SYNC to reduce the amount of background noise in the vehicle. The fan speed will automatically return to normal operation once the voice session ends. Fan speed can also be adjusted normally during a voice session, simply press fan buttons (or turn fan knob) to increase or decrease fan speed to desired setting.*

To disable this automatic fan speed reduction feature during voice sessions, press and hold the climate control AC and Recirculated air buttons simultaneously, release and then increase fan speed within 2 seconds. To re-enable this feature, repeat the above sequence.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

ENTERTAINMENT



E224963

Item	Message	Description
A	Sources	This displays your selected media source.
B	Presets	This allows you to select the preset bank you want to view.
C	Preset	This shows you the stations that you have saved as presets.

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

The available options may change depending on the source that you select. These options may include:

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Message and description	
Direct Tune	A popup appears, allowing you to type in the frequency of a station.
TA	Allows you to switch Traffic Announcements on and off.
Stations	A list of all available radio stations appears. You can select a station by pressing any list entry on the touchscreen. For more entries, you can scroll down using the up and down arrows, the slider or by swiping down the list.

Sources

Press this button to select the source of media you want to listen to.

DAB+/AM/FM/ Radio

Note: *DAB+ Radio may not be available in all markets.*

Tuning a Station

You can use the tune or seek controls on the radio bezel to select a station.

To tune a station using the touchscreen, select:

Menu item	
Direct Tune	A pop up appears, allowing you to type in the frequency of a station.
Station List	A list of all available radio stations appears. You can select a station by pressing any list entry on the touchscreen. For a longer list, you can scroll up and down using the up and down arrows, the slider or by swiping up or down the list.

A pop up appears, allowing you to type in the frequency of a station. You can only enter a valid station for the source you are currently listening to.

You can press the backspace button to delete the previously entered number.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Once you have entered the station's call numbers, you can select:

Menu item	Action and description
Enter	Press to begin playing the station you have entered.
Cancel	Press to exit without changing the station.

Presets

To set a new preset, tune to the station and then press and hold one of the memory preset buttons. The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the station and then returns.

There are two preset banks available for AM, three banks for FM and three banks for DAB (if equipped). To access additional presets, tap the preset button. The indicator on the preset button shows which bank of presets you are currently viewing.

CD

Once you select this option, the system returns you to the main audio screen.

The current audio information appears on the screen.

The following buttons are also available:

Button	Function
Browse	You can use the browse button to select a track.
Repeat	Select this button and a small number one displays to indicate the track is set to repeat. For MP3 CDs, this button allows you to toggle through repeat off, repeat one track (a small number one displays), and repeat current folder (a small folder displays).
Shuffle	Select the shuffle symbol to have the audio on the disk play in random order.

You can use the forward, reverse, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

Bluetooth Stereo or USB

Bluetooth Stereo and USB allow you to access media that you store on your Bluetooth device or USB device such as music, audio books or podcasts.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

The following buttons are available for Bluetooth and USB:

Button	Function
Repeat	Pressing the repeat button toggles the repeat setting through three modes: repeat off (button not highlighted), repeat all (button highlighted) and repeat track (button highlighted with a small number one).
Shuffle	Play the tracks in random order.

You can use the forward, reverse, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

To get more information about the currently playing track, press the cover art or Info button.

For some devices, SYNC 3 is able to provide 30-second skip buttons when you listen to audio books or podcasts. These buttons allow you to skip forward or backward within a track.

While playing audio from a USB device you can look for certain music by selecting the following:

Button	Function
Browse	If available, displays the list of tracks in the Now Playing playlist.
New Search	This option, which is available under browse, allows you to play all tracks or to filter the available media into one of the below categories.
	Play All
	Playlists
	Artists
	Albums
	Songs
	Genres
	Podcasts
	Audiobooks

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Button	Function
	Composers
A-Z Jump	This button allows you to choose a specific letter to view within the category you are browsing.
Explore Device	If available, this allows you to browse the folders and files on your USB device.

USB Ports

The USB ports are in the center console or behind a small access door in the instrument panel.

This feature allows you to plug in USB media devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices if they support this feature.

Select this option to play audio from your USB device.

Apps

The system supports the use of certain audio apps such as iHeartRadio through a USB or Bluetooth-enabled device.

Each app gives you different on-screen options depending on the app's content. See **Apps** (page 346).

Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

The system is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, iPhone, and most USB drives.

Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported audio file extensions include MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported USB file systems include: FAT, exFAT, and NTFS.

SYNC 3 is also able to organize the media from your USB device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file.

If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC 3 may classify the empty metadata tags as unknown.

SYNC 3 is capable of indexing up to 50,000 songs per USB device, for up to 10 devices.

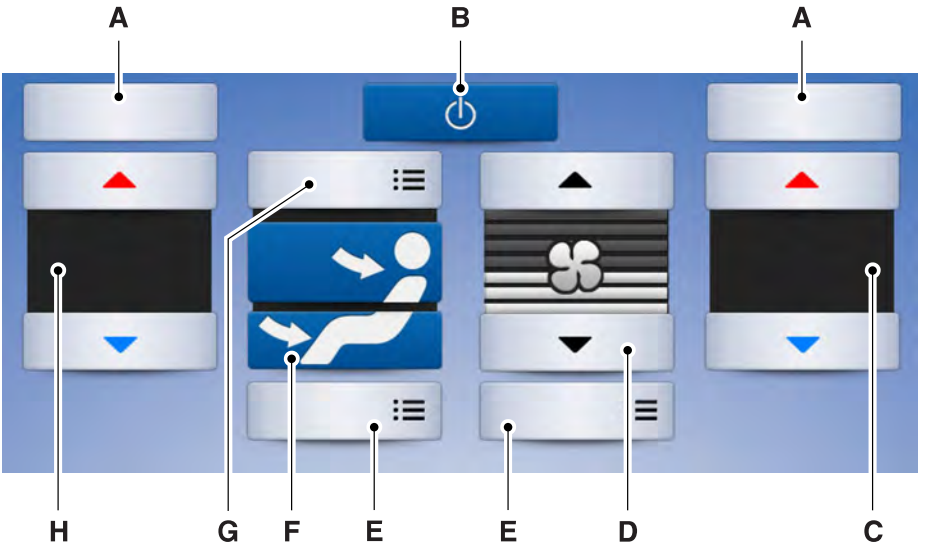
CLIMATE

Climate is optional for your vehicle.

Touch the climate button on the touchscreen to access your climate control features. Depending on your vehicle line and option package, your climate screen may look different from one of the screens shown below. Your screen may not contain all of the features shown.

Note: *You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See* ***Settings*** *(page 347).*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing



E243778

Callout	Item	Description
A	AUTO	Touch the button to switch on automatic operation. Select the desired temperature using the temperature control. The system adjusts fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and selects outside air or recirculated air to heat or cool the vehicle in order to maintain the desired temperature.
	DUAL	This button lights up when the passenger controls are active. To switch the dual zone operation off and link the passenger temperature to the driver temperature, touch the DUAL button to switch it off.
B	Power	Touch the button to switch the system on and off. Switching off the climate control system prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Callout	Item	Description	
C	Right-hand front seat temperature:	Touch up or down to adjust the temperature.	
D	Fan speed	Touch up or down to increase or decrease the volume of air circulated in your vehicle.	
E	Rear	A pop up appears on the screen to display the rear control options.	
		Touch the power icon to switch the rear climate control functions off and on.	
		Touch **Rear Control** to allow the rear seat passengers to adjust the rear climate settings. Touch it again to prevent the rear seat passengers from adjusting the settings. **Rear Control** automatically turns off when you use the touchscreen to adjust the rear climate settings	
		If your vehicle has automatic climate controls, select **Auto** to connect the rear climate settings to the Auto settings of the driver.	
		Touch the up and down arrows to adjust the temperature.	
	A/C	A popup appears on the screen to display the air conditioning options.	
		MAX A/C	Touch to cool your vehicle with recirculated air. Touch again for normal A/C operation. MAX A/C distributes air through instrument panel vents and may help reduce odors from entering your vehicle. MAX A/C is more economical and efficient than normal A/C mode.
		A/C	Touch to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. A/C engages automatically in MAX A/C, defrost and footwell/defrost

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Callout	Item	Description	
		Recirculated air:	Touch to switch the recirculated air on or off which may reduce the amount of time needed to cool down the interior and help reduce odors from reaching the interior. Recirculated air also engages automatically when you select MAX A/C. You can engage this manually in any airflow mode except defrost. It may also turn off in all airflow modes except MAX A/C to reduce fog potential.
F	Manual airflow distribution controls	Panel	Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.
		Floor	Distributes air through the demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents.
G	Defrost	A pop up appears on the screen to display the defrost options.	
		Select these controls individually or together to direct the air flow to the desired area.	
		MAX Defrost:	Touch the button to maximize defrosting. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed and the temperature dial returns to the full heat position. You can use this setting to defog or clear a thin covering of ice from the windshield. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select MAX Defrost. Touch this button again to return to the previous airflow selection.
		Defrost	Touch to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice. Touch again to return to the previous airflow selection. When on, defrost provides outside air to reduce window fogging and distributes air through the windshield defroster vents and demister vents. Touch again to return to the pervious airflow selection. **Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when Defrost is on.
H	Left-hand front seat temperature	Touch up or down to adjust the temperature.	

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

PHONE

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC 3. Once you pair your cell phone, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Pair your Bluetooth-enabled phone with the system before using the functions in hands-free mode.

Switch on Bluetooth on your device to begin pairing. See your phone's manual if necessary.

To add a phone, select:

Menu Item	
Add a Bluetooth Device	This is on the phone feature screen or you can use the voice command. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 320).

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle model on your phone.
3. Select your vehicle model as it displays on your phone.
4. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
5. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
6. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Alternatively, to add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add a Bluetooth Device
Then select:
Discover Other Bluetooth Devices

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. Select your phone's name when it appears on the touchscreen.
3. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
4. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
5. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Dialing a number.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

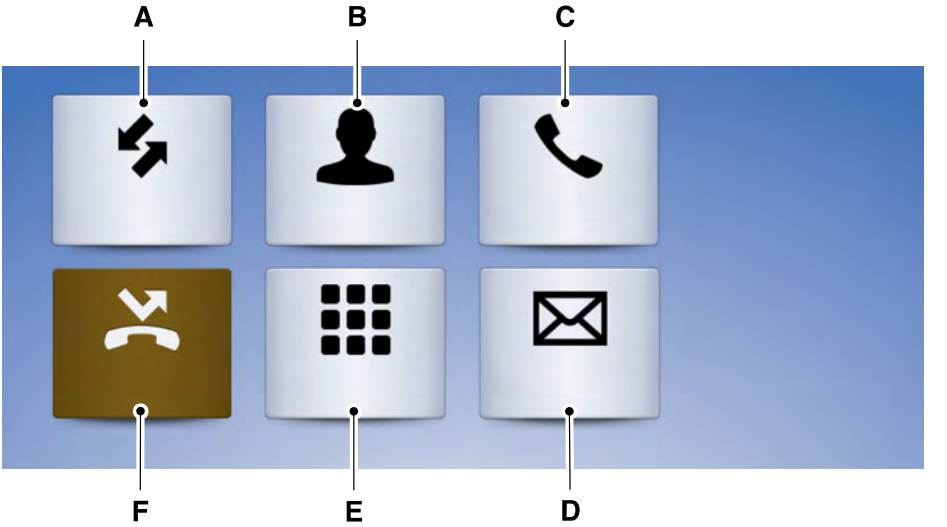
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller identification.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features.

To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the regional ford website.

Phone Menu

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.



E224136

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description			
A	Recent Call List	Displays your recent calls. You can place a call by selecting an entry from this list. You can also sort the calls by selecting the drop down menu at the top of the screen. You can choose:			
		All	Incoming	Outgoing	Missed
B	Contacts	All of your contacts from your phone display in alphabetical order.			

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description	
		A-Z Jump	Selecting this button allows you to choose a specific letter to view.
C	Phone Settings	Displays the name of your phone and takes you to the phone settings options. From this menu, you can pair subsequent devices, set ring tones and alerts. See **Phone** (page 334).	
D	Text Messages	Displays all recent text messages.	
E	Phone Keypad	Use this keypad to dial in a phone number. Use the backspace button to delete numbers.	
		Call	Press this button to begin a call.
F	Do Not Disturb	Touch this button to let SYNC automatically reject your incoming calls. New text message notifications are not displayed on the screen and all ringtones and alerts are set to silent.	

Users with phones having voice services may see a button to access the feature. For example, iPhone users see a Siri button. A press and hold of the voice button on the steering wheel also accesses this feature.

Making Calls

There are many ways to make calls from the SYNC 3 system, including using voice commands. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 320). You can use the touchscreen to place calls as well.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call List	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: *You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.*

To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Note: *You can also reject the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.*

Ignore the call by doing nothing. SYNC 3 logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Item	
End Call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.
Privacy	Transfer the call to the cell phone or back to SYNC 3.

Text Messaging

Note: *Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.*

Note: *Certain features in text messaging are speed-dependent and not available when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 5 km/h.*

Receiving a Text Message

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the screen displays a pop-up with the caller name and ID, if supported by your cell phone. You can select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Hear It	Have SYNC 3 read the message to you.
View	View the text on the touchscreen.
Call	To call the sender.
Reply	You can select from 15 preset messages. Press the message that you would like to use and confirm to send the message. SYNC 3 confirms when the message is sent successfully.
Close	To exit the screen.

Smartphone Connectivity (If Equipped)

SYNC 3 allows you to use Apple CarPlay and Android Auto to access your phone.

When you use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, you can:

- Make calls.
- Send and receive messages.
- Listen to music.
- Use your phone's voice assistant.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto disable some SYNC 3 features.

Most Apple CarPlay and Android Auto features use mobile data.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay requires an iPhone 5 or newer with iOS 7.1 or newer. Updating to the latest iOS version is recommended.

Note: *Apple CarPlay may not be available within your current market.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

1. Plug your phone into a USB port. See **Media Hub** (page 267).
2. Select Apple CarPlay on the touchscreen.

To disable this feature from the Settings screen, select:

Menu Item
Apple CarPlay Preferences
Your device is listed if SYNC detects Apple CarPlay. Select the name of your device and select:
Disable

To return to SYNC 3, go to the Apple CarPlay home screen and select the SYNC app.

Note: *Contact Apple for Apple CarPlay support.*

Android Auto

Android Auto is compatible with most devices with Android 5.0 or newer.

1. Download the Android Auto app to your device from Google Play to prepare your device (this may require mobile data usage).

Note: *The Android Auto App may not be available within your current market.*

2. To switch this feature on from the Settings screen, scroll left on the screen and select:

Menu Item
Android Auto Preferences
Enable Android Auto

Note: *Android Auto must be switched on prior to plugging your device.*

You can then plug your device into a USB port. See **Media Hub** (page 267).

To disable this feature from the Settings screen, select:

Menu Item
Android Auto Preferences
Your device is listed if SYNC detects Android Auto. Select the name of your device and select:
Disable

Note: *You may need to slide your Settings screen to the left to select **Apple CarPlay Preferences** or **Android Auto Preferences**.*

To return to SYNC 3, select the speedometer icon in the Android Auto menu bar at the bottom of the touchscreen, and then touch the option to return to SYNC.

Note: *Contact Google for Android Auto support.*

NAVIGATION (If Equipped)

Your navigation system is comprised of two main features, destination mode and map mode.

Map Mode

Map mode shows advanced viewing comprised of 2D city maps, 3D landmarks and 3D city models (when available). 2D city maps show detailed outlines of buildings, visible land use, landscape features, and detailed railroad infrastructure for the most essential cities around the globe.

3D landmarks appear as clear, visible objects that are typically recognizable and have a certain tourism value.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

3D city models are complete 3D models of entire city areas including navigable roads, parks, rivers and rendered buildings. 3D landmarks and city models appear in 3D map mode only. Coverage of these varies and improves with updated map releases.



Select the zoom in icon to see a closer view of the map.



Select the zoom out icon to see a farther away view of the map.

You can adjust the view in preset increments. You can also pinch to zoom in or out of the map.

The information bar tells you the names of streets, cities or landmarks as you hover over them with the crosshair curser.

You can change your view of the map by tapping on the location indicator icon on the right hand side of the screen. You can choose from the following options:



Heading up (2D map) This always shows the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen. This view is available for map scales up to 5 km.



North up (2D map) always shows the northern direction to be upward on the screen.



3D map mode provides an elevated perspective of the map. Adjust this viewing angle and rotate the map 180 degrees by touching the map twice, and then dragging your finger along the shaded bar with arrows at the bottom of the map.



Re-center the map by pressing this icon whenever you scroll the map away from your vehicle's current location.



Points of Interest (POI) grouping icon: You can choose up to three POI icons to display on the map. If the chosen POIs are located close together or are at the same location a box is used to display a single category icon instead of repeating the same icon, in order to reduce clutter. When you select the box on the map, a pop-up appears indicating how many POIs are in this location. Select the pop up to see a list of the available POIs. You can scroll through and select POIs from this list.

If your vehicle is low on charge or fuel, station icons automatically display on the map.

You can choose to display traffic icons on the map representing twelve different types of incidents. See **Settings** (page 347).

You can set a destination by hovering above a location and selecting:

Button
Start

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Destination Mode

To set a destination, press:

Menu Item	Description
Destination	
Enter a navigation destination in any of the following formats:	
Search	Street Address (number, street, city, state) For example "1437 Sydney Road Campbellfield VIC"
	Partial Address (number, street) if searching in current state (number, street and suburb or postcode if searching out of state You can enter unique addresses that contain door number prefixes with or without the prefix. For example, you could enter "6N340 Fairway Lane" or "340 Fairway Lane".
	City (name or postcode)
	Point of Interest (name or category)
	Intersection (street 1 / street 2) (street 1 and street 2) (street 1 & street 2) (street 1 @ street 2) (street 1 at street 2)
	Latitude and Longitude (##.###### , ##.######) This is in a decimal degrees format, one to six decimal places are accepted.
	You are given autocomplete options below the address bar to select as you type. If you do not give an exact destination, a menu displays with your possible selections.
Previous Destinations	Collections of your last 40 navigation destinations display here. You can select any option from the list to select it as your destination.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Menu Item	Description	
	Delete All	Select this option to remove all previous destinations.
Home	Select to navigate to your set Home destination. The time it takes to travel from your current location to Home displays. To set your Home, press:	
	Home	A prompt appears asking if you would like to create a favorite for home. Select:
	Yes	Enter a location into the search bar and press:
	Save	
Work	Select to navigate to your set Work destination. The time it takes to travel from your current location to Work displays. To set your Work:	
	Work	A prompt appears asking if you would like to create a favorite for work. Select:
	Yes	Enter a location into the search bar and press:
	Save	
Favorites	Favorites include any location you have previously saved. To add Favorites:	
	Add a Favorite	Select this button and enter a location into the destination bar.
	Search	Select this option to have the system locate the address you have entered.
	Save	Select this button when the address you have entered appears on the screen.
	The address saves as a favorite and you see the favorites screen. You can now select this address from the favorites screen.	
Point of Interest (POI) Categories	POI categories that may display (based on market and vehicle configuration):	
	Food	
	Fuel	
	Hotel	
	ATM	

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Menu Item	Description	
	See All	Press to view additional categories. Once you have selected a category, follow the menus to find what you are looking for.
	Inside of these categories you can search by:	
	Nearby	
	Along Route	
	Near Destination	
	In a City	

Once you have chosen your destination, press:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Save	This saves the destination to your favorites.	
Start	This shows you a map of your entire route. You can then choose your route from three different options.	
	Fastest	Uses the fastest moving roads possible.
	Shortest	Uses the shortest distance possible.
	Eco	Uses the most fuel-efficient route.
	The time and distance for each route also displays.	
Cancel	On the route screen, you can choose to cancel the current navigation. The system asks for confirmation then returns you to the map mode screen.	

Once you have chosen you destination, press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Start	The system uses a variety of screens and prompts to guide you to your destination. During Route guidance, you can press the maneuver arrow icon on the map if you want the system to repeat route guidance instructions. When the system repeats the last guidance instruction, it updates the distance to the next guidance instruction, since it detects that the vehicle is moving.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
	The navigation map shows your estimated time of arrival, remaining travel time and the distance to your destination. SYNC 3 may not always announce vehicle arrival at the exact point of your destination and you may have to cancel a route manually.

Navigation Menu

In map mode and during active navigation you can access the navigation menu.

During active navigation, touch the bottom of the screen to view the menu and other buttons.

To access the Navigation menu, press:

Button		
Menu		
You can then select:		
Screen View	Full Map	A full screen map displays during navigation.
	Highway Exit Info	Highway exit information displays on the right hand side of the screen during navigation. Points of interest icons display for restaurants, hotels, fuel stations and ATMs when they are present at the exit. You can select the POI icons to receive a listing of specific locations. You can select the POI location as a waypoint or destination if desired.
	Turn List	Only available during an active route. Displays all of the turns on the current route. You can choose to avoid any road on the turn list by selecting the road from the list. A screen then appears and you can press:
		Avoid
		The system calculates a new route and displays a new turn list.
Traffic List	When a route is not active, a list of nearby traffic incidents displays (if any are present). When a route is active, you can choose to display a list of traffic nearby or on the route.	
Navigation Settings	Press this button to adjust your preferences. See **Settings** (page 347).	
Where Am I?	Provides your current location city and the nearest road.	

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Button		
The following are only available on the menu during an active navigation route:		
Cancel Route	The system asks for confirmation and then returns you to the map mode screen.	
Mute Guidance	Selecting this option switches off the audio navigation guidance. Press the button again to un-mute guidance.	
View Route	Press this to see a map of the full route.	
Detour	An alternate route displays in comparison with the current route.	
Edit Waypoints	Only available if you have an active waypoint on your route. See **Waypoints** later in this section for information on how to set waypoints.	
	Use this button to re-order or remove your waypoints.	
	You can also have the system set the order for you by pressing:	Optimize Order
	To return to your route press:	Go

Waypoints

You can add a waypoint to a navigation route as a destination along your route.

To add a waypoint:

1. Select the search icon (magnifying glass) while on an active route. This brings up the destination menu.
2. Set your destination using any of the given methods. Once the destination has been selected, the screen allows you to set the destination as a waypoint by selecting:

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Menu Item	
Add Waypoint	The waypoint list then appears and you are able to re-order all of your waypoints by selecting the menu icon on the right hand side of the location. You can select up to five waypoints.
You can also have the system set the order for you by pressing:	Optimize Order
To return to your route, press:	Go

Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available through your dealership. Please see your dealer for further information. HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you may report them directly to HERE by going to www.here.com. HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

APPS

The system enables voice, steering wheel, and touch screen control of SYNC 3 AppLink enabled smart phone apps. Once an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and steering wheel controls.

Note: *Available AppLink enabled apps will vary by market.*

Note: *You must pair and connect your smart phone via Bluetooth to SYNC 3 to access AppLink.*

Note: *iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port.*

Note: *For information on available apps, supported smart phone devices and troubleshooting tips please visit:*

Website
www.fordsync.com

Note: *Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps will work automatically with no setup. Other apps will want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle.*

Note: *We encourage you to review the smart phone app's terms of service and privacy policies because Ford is not responsible for your app or its use of data*

Note: *In order to use an app with SYNC 3, the App needs to be running in the background of your phone. If you shut down the app on your phone, it shuts down the app on SYNC 3 as well.*

Note: *If a SYNC 3 AppLink compatible app is not shown in the Apps Domain, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.*

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
Connect Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will search and connect to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device.

Enabling SYNC 3 Mobile Apps

In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC 3 requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

The connected device sends data to Ford in the United States. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC 3 module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place automatically.

Note: *You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.*

Note: *Standard data rates apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.*

You can enable and disable apps through settings. See **Settings** (page 347).

App Permissions

The system organizes the App permissions into groups. You can grant these group permissions individually. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu. While in the settings menu, you can also see the data included in each group.

When you launch an app using SYNC 3, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example Vehicle information, Driving characteristics, GPS and Speed, and/or Push notifications. You can enable all groups or none of them during the initial app permissions prompts. The settings menu offers individual group permission control.

Note: *You are only prompted to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC 3.*

Note: *If you disable group permissions, apps will still be enabled to work with SYNC 3 unless you deactivate All Apps in the settings menu.*

SETTINGS

Under this menu, you can access and adjust the settings for many of the system features. To access additional settings, swipe the screen left or right.

Sound

Pressing this button allows you to adjust the following:

Sound Settings	
Reset All	Returns Treble, Midrange, and Bass sound settings to factory levels.
Treble	Adjusts the high frequency level.
Midrange	Adjusts the middle frequency level.
Bass	Adjusts the low frequency level.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Sound Settings	
Balance / Fade	Adjusts the sound ratio from side to side or front to back.
Speed Compensated Vol.	Adjusts the amount the audio system volume increases with speed, or turns the feature off.
Occupancy Mode	Optimizes the sound based on the location of the listeners.
Sound Settings	Stereo
	Surround

Your vehicle might not have all of these features.

Media Player

This button is available when a media device such as a Bluetooth Stereo or USB device is the active audio source. Pressing the button allows you to access the following options for active devices only.

Menu Item	Action and Description		
Podcast Speed	For some Apple devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of podcasts. When a podcast is playing, you can choose:		
	Slower	Normal	Faster
Audiobook Speed	For some Apple devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of audiobooks. When an audiobook is playing, you can choose:		
	Slower	Normal	Faster
Gracenote® Management	Switches on an off Gracenote® to provide metadata information such as genre, artist, album.		
Gracenote® Database Info	This allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database.		
Device Information	This allows you to view the manufacturer and model number of your media device.		
Update Media Index	Erase the stored in media information in order to re-index.		

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Clock

To adjust the time, select the up and down arrows on either side of the screen. The arrows on the left adjust the hour and arrows on the right adjust the minute. You can then select AM or PM.

You can adjust the following features:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Clock Format	Select how time displays.
Reset Clock to GPS Time	When selected, the vehicle clock resets to GPS satellite time.

The system automatically saves any updates you make to the settings.

Bluetooth

Pressing this button allows you to access the following:

Menu Item	Action
Bluetooth	Turning Bluetooth off disconnects all devices and does not permit new connections.

You must activate Bluetooth to pair a Bluetooth-enabled device.

The processes of pairing a Bluetooth device is the same as pairing a phone. See **To add a phone** in Phone settings for how to pair a device and the available options.

Phone

Pair your Bluetooth-enabled phone with the system before using the functions in hands-free mode.

Switch on Bluetooth on your device to begin pairing. See your phone's manual if necessary.

To add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. A prompt alerts you to search for the system on your phone.
3. Select your vehicle's make and model as it displays on your phone.
4. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
5. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
6. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Alternatively, to add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone
Then select:
Discover Other Bluetooth Devices

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. Select your phone's name when it appears on the touchscreen.
3. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
4. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
5. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features.

To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website:

Website
www.fordsync.com

Once you have paired a device you can adjust the following options.

Menu Item	Action and Description
View Devices	
You can then select:	
Add a Bluetooth Device	You can add a Bluetooth-enabled device by following the steps in the previous table.
You can select a phone by touching the name of the phone on the screen. You then have the following options:	
Connect	Depending on the status of the device, you can select either of these options to interact with the selected device.
Disconnect	
Device Information	Allows you to see phone and device information.
Make Favorite	Allows you to select this device to be your preferred device.
Delete	Removes the selected device from the system.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Manage Contacts	
You can then select:	
Auto Phonebook Download	Enable this option to have SYNC 3 periodically re-download your phonebook to keep your contact list up to date.
Sort By:	Choose how you would like the system to display your contacts. You can choose:

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description	
	First Name	Last Name
Re-download Phonebook	Select this option to re-download your contact list manually.	
Delete Phonebook	Select this option to delete the in vehicle contact list. Deleting the in vehicle list does not erase the contact list on the connected phone.	

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set Phone Ringtone	
You can then select:	
No Ringtone	No sound plays when a call comes to your phone.
Use Phone Ringtone	The currently selected ringtone on your phone plays when you receive a call. This option may not be available for all phones. If this option is available, it is the default setting.
You can also select one of the three available ringers.	

Menu Item	Action and Description
Text Message Notification	
You can then select:	
No Alert (Silence)	No sound plays when a message comes to your phone.
You can select one of the three available notification sounds.	
Voice Readout	When enabled, a voice prompt alerts you when you receive a new message.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

You can enable and disable the following options as well:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Mute Audio in Privacy	When enabled, vehicle audio (such as radio or apps) is muted for the duration of the phone call even when the phone call is in privacy.
Roaming Warning	When enabled, an alert displays that your phone is roaming when you attempt to place a call.
Low Battery Notification	When enabled, a message displays when the battery on your phone is running low.

Emergency Assistance

Note: *The SYNC Emergency Assistance feature only operates in territories that are supporting the feature.*

Select this button to modify the on or off setting for this feature. If the mobile phone's contacts have been downloaded, you can adjust the following option:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set Emergency Contacts	You can select up to two numbers from your mobile device's phonebook as emergency contacts for quick access at the end of the Emergency Assistance call process.

Radio

This button is available if a Radio source such as AM or FM is the active media source. Pressing the button allows you to access the following features:

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
FM HD Radio AM HD Radio (Dependent on current radio source, if equipped and available)	Activation of this feature allows you to listen to HD radio broadcasts.
Radio Text	This feature is available when FM Radio is your active media source. Activate this feature to have the system display radio text.
Autoset Presets (AST)	Refresh
	Selecting this option stores the six strongest stations in your current location to the last preset bank of the currently tuned source.

Navigation (If Equipped)

You can adjust many of the Navigation preferences by selecting the following menus.

Map Preferences

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Map Preferences		
Then select any of the following:		
3D City Model	When this option is active, the system shows 3D renderings of buildings.	
Breadcrumbs	When enabled, your vehicle's previously traveled route displays with white dots.	
POI Icons	Enable this feature to display up to 3 POI icons on the navigation map.	
	Once this feature is activated you can select the icons you want displayed by selecting:	Select POIs
Incident Map Icons	This menu allows you to choose which incident icons you would like to have displayed on the navigation map.	

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Route Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions		
Route Preferences			
Then select any of the following:			
Preferred Route	Choose to have the system display your chosen route type.		
	Shortest	Fastest	Eco
Always Use ___ Route	Bypass route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on your preferred route setting. When activated, the system uses your selected route type to calculate only one route to the desired destination.		
Automatically Find Parking	The system searches for and displays available parking locations as you approach your destination.		
Eco Time Penalty	Select a level of cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.		
Avoid Traffic Problems	You can select the following to have the system:		
	Avoid Freeways	Avoid Toll Roads	Avoid Ferries/Car Trains

Navigation Preferences

Menu Item	Action and Description
Navigation Preferences	
Guidance Prompts	You can adjust how the system provides prompts.
Then select any of the following:	
Voice and Tones	
Voice Only	
Tones Only	

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Mobile Apps

You can enable the control of compatible mobile apps running on your Bluetooth or USB device on SYNC 3. In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC 3 requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

The connected devices sends data to Ford in the United States. The encrypted information includes your VIN, SYNC 3 module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place automatically.

Note: *All Mobile Apps may not be compatible with the system.*

Note: *Standard data rates will apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.*

<table>
<tr><th>Menu Item</th><th colspan="3">Action and Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Mobile Apps</td><td colspan="3">Enable or disable the use of mobile apps on SYNC 3.
Disabling mobile apps in the settings menu disables automatic updates and the use of mobile apps on SYNC 3.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="3">You can view the status of mobile app permissions in the settings menu.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Once Mobile Apps is enabled, you have the following options:</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Update Mobile Apps</td><td colspan="3">This provides information on the current state of available app updates.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">There are three possible statuses:</td></tr>
<tr><td>Update Needed</td><td>Up-To-Date</td><td>Updating Mobile Apps...</td></tr>
<tr><td>The system has detected a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.</td><td>No update is required.</td><td>The system is trying to receive an update.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="2">Request Update</td><td>Select this button if an update is required and you want to request this update manually. For example, when your mobile device is connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot, select:</td></tr>
</table>

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description	
		Request Update
All Apps	Grant or deny permissions to all apps at once.	
There may also be SYNC 3 enabled apps listed under these options.	Grant or deny an individual app particular permissions. App permissions are organized into groups. By pressing the info book icon, you can see which signals are included in each group.	

Note: *Ford is not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve Ford to provide to an app.*

General

Access and adjust the system settings, voice features, as well as phone, navigation (if equipped) and wireless settings.

Menu Item	
Language	Select to have the touchscreen display in one of the selectable languages.
Distance	Select to display units in kilometers or miles.
Temperature	Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit.
Touch Screen Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen.
Automatic System Updates	When you activate this option, the system automatically updates when you have an available Internet connection through a Wi-Fi network or mobile connection.
About SYNC	Information pertaining to the system and its software.
Software Licenses	Documentation of the software license for the system.
Master Reset	Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data.

Wi-Fi

You can adjust the following:

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
Wi-Fi	Enable this option to connect to Wi-Fi for SYNC 3 vehicle software updates.
View Available Networks	This provides you with a list of available Wi-Fi networks within range.
	Clicking on a network from the list allows you to connect or disconnect from that network. The system may require a security code to connect.
	When you click the information button next to a network, more information about the network displays such as the signal strength, connection status and security type.
Wi-Fi Available Notifications	The system alerts you when your vehicle is parked and a Wi-Fi network is within range if SYNC is not already connected.

Ambient Lighting (If Equipped)

Tap a color once to switch on ambient lighting. This sets the color to the highest intensity.

You can drag the colors up and down to increase or decrease the intensity.

To switch ambient lighting off, press the active color once or drag the active color all the way down to zero intensity.

Vehicle

Note: *You vehicle may not have all of these features.*

You can select the following features to update their settings.

Camera Settings

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Message	Action and Description
Camera Settings	
Then select from the following:	
Rear Camera Delay (if equipped)	You can enable or disable this option using the slider.

You can find more information on the rear-view camera system in the parking aids chapter of your owner manual.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Display

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Brightness	Make the screen display brighter or dimmer.	
Mode	You can select:	
	Auto	The screen automatically switches between day and night modes based on the outside light level.
	Day	The screen displays with a light background to enhance daytime viewing.
	Night	The screen displays with a darker background to make nighttime viewing easier.
	Off	The screen goes black and does not display anything. To switch the screen back on, simply tap the screen.
Auto Dim	Enable this option to automatically dim the display brightness based on ambient lighting conditions.	

Voice Control

You can adjust the voice control settings by selecting the following options.

Menu Item	
Advanced Mode	Enable this option to remove additional voice prompts and confirmations.
Phone Confirmation	Enable this option to have the system confirm a contact's name with you before making a call.
Voice Command List	Enable this option to have the system display a list of available voice commands when the voice button is pressed.

Valet Mode

Valet mode allows you to lock the system. No information is accessible until the system is unlocked with the correct PIN.

When you select valet mode a pop up appears informing you that a four digit code must be entered to enable and disable valet mode. You can use any PIN you chose but you must use the same PIN to disable valet mode. The system asks you to input the code.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Note: *If the system is locked and you cannot remember the PIN, please contact the Customer Relationship Center.*

To enable valet mode, enter your chosen PIN. The system then asks to confirm your PIN by reentering it. The system then locks.

To unlock the system, enter the same pin number. The system reconnects to your phone and all of your options are available again.

SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC 3 system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

To check your cell phone's compatibility, visit the Ford website.

Website
www.fordsync.com

Phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
There is background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your cell phone may be affecting SYNC 3 performance.	Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
		Make sure that the microphone for SYNC 3 is not set to off. Look for the microphone icon on the phone screen.
During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me.	The system may need to be restarted.	To restart your system, shut down the engine, open and close the door, and then lock the door and wait for 2-3 minutes. Make sure that your SYNC 3 screen is black and the lighted USB port is off.
SYNC 3 is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Make sure you allow SYNC 3 to retrieve contacts from your phone. Refer to your cell manual.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC 3.
		Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The system says "Phonebook downloaded" but my SYNC 3 phonebook is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your cell phone's capability.	Make sure you allow SYNC 3 to retrieve contacts from your phone. Refer to your cell manual.
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, move them to your cell phone's memory.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC 3.
I am having trouble connecting my cell phone to SYNC 3.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
		Try deleting your device from SYNC 3 and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again.
		Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC 3 Bluetooth connection on your cell phone.
		Update your cell phone's firmware.
		Switch the auto download setting off.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC 3.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
	iPhone	• Go to your iPhone's Settings. • Go to the Bluetooth Menu. • Press the blue circle to the right of the device named with your vehicle make and model to enter the next menu. • Turn Show Notifications on. • Disconnect then reconnect your iPhone from the SYNC 3 system to activate this settings update.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
		Your iPhone is now set up to forward incoming text messages to SYNC 3. Repeat these steps for every other SYNC 3 vehicle that you connect. Your iPhone will only forward incoming text messages to SYNC 3 if the iPhone is not unlocked in the text sender's screen of the messaging application. Replying to text messages using SYNC 3 is not supported by iPhone. Text messages from WhatsApp and Facebook Messenger are not supported.
Audible text messages do not work on my cell phone.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Your cell phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.
	This is a cell phone limitation.	Because each cell phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific cell phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between cell phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.

USB and Bluetooth Stereo issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	Disconnect the device from SYNC 3. Try switching your device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then reconnect it to SYNC 3.
		Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.
		Make sure to correctly insert the USB cable into the device and your vehicle's USB port.
		Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
	The device has a lock screen enabled.	Make sure your device is unlocked before connecting it to SYNC 3.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

USB and Bluetooth Stereo issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC 3 does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a device-dependent feature.	Make sure you connect the device to SYNC 3 and that you have started the media player on your device.
	The device is not connected.	
SYNC 3 does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version.
	The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.
	The file format is not supported by SYNC 3.	Convert the file to a supported format.
	The device needs to be re-indexed.	Update media index. See **Settings** (page 347).
	The device has a lock screen enabled.	Make sure your device is unlocked before connecting it to SYNC 3.
When I connect my device, I sometimes do not hear any sound.	This is a device limitation.	Disconnect the device from SYNC 3. Try switching your device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then connect it back to SYNC 3.
		To listen to Apple devices through USB, select AirPlay from the devices Control Center, then select Dock Connector.
		To listen to Apple devices through Bluetooth Stereo, select AirPlay from the devices Control Center, then select SYNC.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Wi-Fi Issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
Failed connection.	Password error.	Verify password.
	Weak signal.	Check for a poor Wi-Fi signal.
	Multiple Access points within range with the same SSID.	Use a unique name for your SSID, don't use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, such as part of the MAC address.
Disconnecting after successful connection.	Weak signal probably due to distance from the hotspot, obstruction or high interference.	Position the vehicle close to the hotspot with the front of the vehicle facing the hotspot direction and remove obstacles if possible. Other Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, microwave and cordless phones may cause interference.
Poor signal seen by SYNC 3 despite being near a hotspot.	There may be an obstruction between SYNC 3 and the hotspot.	If the vehicle is equipped with heated windshield, try positioning the vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the hotspot. If you have metallic window tinting but not on the windshield, position the vehicle to face the hotspot. If all windows are tinted, you can open the windows in the direction of the hotspot if that is feasible. Try to remove other obstructions that may impact signal quality such as opening the garage door.
A hotspot is not listed in the list of available networks.	The hotspot was defined as a hidden network.	Please set the network to visible and try again.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Wi-Fi Issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC 3 is not seen when searching for Wi-Fi networks from your phone or other devices.	SYNC 3 does not currently provide a hotspot.	SYNC 3 currently does not provide a hotspot
Software download takes too long.	Poor signal strength, too far from the hotspot, hotspot is supporting multiple connections, slow Internet connection or other problems.	Check the signal quality (under network details), if SYNC 3 indicates good or excellent, test with another high-speed equipped hotspot where the environment is more predictable.
SYNC 3 seems to connect with a hotspot and the signal strength is excellent but the software is not being updated.	It is possible that there is no new software. The connected hotspot may be a managed one and it requires either a subscription or agreeing to the terms and conditions.	Test the connection with another device, if the hotspot requires a subscription, you may contact the service provider.

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
AppLink Mobile Applications: When I select "Find New Apps," SYNC 3 does not find any applications.	You did not connect an Applink Compatible phone to SYNC 3.	Make sure you have a compatible smartphone; an Android with OS 2.3 or higher or an iPhone 3GS or newer with iOS 5.0 or higher. Additionally, make sure you pair and connect your phone

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		to SYNC 3 in order to find AppLink-capable apps on your device. iPhone users must also connect to a USB port with an Apple USB cable.
My phone is connected, but I still cannot find any apps.	AppLink-enabled apps are not installed and running on your mobile device.	Make sure you have downloaded and installed the latest version of the app from your phone's app store. Make sure the app is running on your phone. Some apps require you to register or login to the app on the phone before using them with AppLink. Also, some may have a "Ford SYNC" setting, so check the app's settings menu on the phone.
My phone is connected, my app(s) are running, but I still cannot find any apps.	Sometimes apps do not properly close and re-open their connection to SYNC 3, over ignition cycles, for example.	Closing and restarting apps may help SYNC 3 find the application if you cannot discover it inside the vehicle. On an Android device, if apps have an 'Exit' or 'Quit' option, then select it and restart the app. If the app does not have that option, select the phone's settings menu and select 'Apps', then find the particular app and choose 'Force stop.' Do not forget to restart the app afterward, then select "Find New Apps" on SYNC 3.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		On an iPhone with iOS7+, to force close an app, double tap the home button then swipe up on the app to close it. Tap the home button again, then select the app again to restart it. After a few seconds, the app should then appear in SYNC 3's Mobile App's Menu.
My Android phone is connected, my app(s) are running, I restarted them, but I still cannot find any apps.	There is a Bluetooth issue on some older versions of the Android operating system that may cause apps that were found on your previous vehicle drive to not be found again if you did not switch Bluetooth off.	Switch Bluetooth off and then on to reset it on your phone. If you are in your vehicle, SYNC 3 should be able to automatically re-connect to your phone if you press the "Phone" button.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
My iPhone is connected, my app is running, I restarted the app but I still cannot find it on SYNC 3.	You may need to reset the USB connection to SYNC 3.	Unplug the USB cable from the phone, wait a moment, and plug the USB cable back in to the phone. After a few seconds, the app should appear in SYNC 3's Mobile Apps Menu. If not, "Force Close" the application and restart it.
I have an Android phone. I found and started my media app on SYNC 3, but there is no sound or the sound is very low.	The Bluetooth volume on the phone may be low.	Increase the Bluetooth volume of the device by using the device's volume control buttons which are most often found on the side of the device.
I can only see some of the AppLink apps running on my phone listed in the SYNC 3 Mobile Apps Menu.	Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more AppLink apps on your phone than the number of available Bluetooth ports, you will not see all of your apps listed in the SYNC 3 mobile apps menu.	Force close or uninstall the apps you do not want SYNC 3 to find. If the app has a "Ford SYNC" setting, disable that setting in the app's settings menu on the phone.

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC 3 does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
		Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	Wait for the system to prompt you before you state your command.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC 3 does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.
	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.	Say the song or artist name exactly as it is displayed on your device. For example, say "Play Artist Prince" or "Play song Purple Rain".
		Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
		If there are any abbreviations in the name, like ESPN or CNN, you have to spell those: "E-S-P-N" or "C-N-N".
	The song or artist name may have some special characters that are not being recognized by SYNC 3.	Make sure that song titles, artists, album, and playlists names do not have any special characters like *, - or +.
SYNC 3 does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your phonebook.	Make sure that you are saying the name exactly as it appears on your phone. For example, if your contact is "Joe Wilson", say "Call Joe Wilson". If your contact name is "Mom", say "Call Mom".
	The contact name may contain special characters.	Make sure that your contact names do not have any special characters like *, - or +.
The SYNC 3 voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone.	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your phonebook.	SYNC 3 applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone.
		Helpful Hint: You can select your contact manually. Press **PHONE**. Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC 3 will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The SYNC 3 voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC 3.	SYNC 3 applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.
The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.	SYNC 3 uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.	SYNC 3 uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.
		SYNC 3 offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

General		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the SYNC 3 language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts).	SYNC 3 does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.	SYNC 3 supports up to four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC 3 remains in the current active language.

SYNC 3 System Reset
The system has a System Reset feature that can be performed if the function of a SYNC 3 feature is lost. This reset is intended to restore functionality and will not erase any information previously stored in the system (such as paired devices, phonebook, call history, text messages, or user settings). To perform a System Reset, press and hold the Seek Up (>>|) button while pressing and holding the Radio Power button. After approximately 5 seconds the screen will go black. Allow 1-2 minutes for the system reset to complete. You may then resume using the SYNC 3 system.

For additional assistance with SYNC 3 troubleshooting please call or visit the Ford Website.

Ford Support	
Website	www.fordsync.com

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

WARNINGS

Your vehicle has been tested and certified to legislations relating to electromagnetic compatibility (72/245/EEC, UN ECE Regulation 10 or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment you have fitted complies with applicable local legislations. Have any equipment fitted by an authorized dealer.

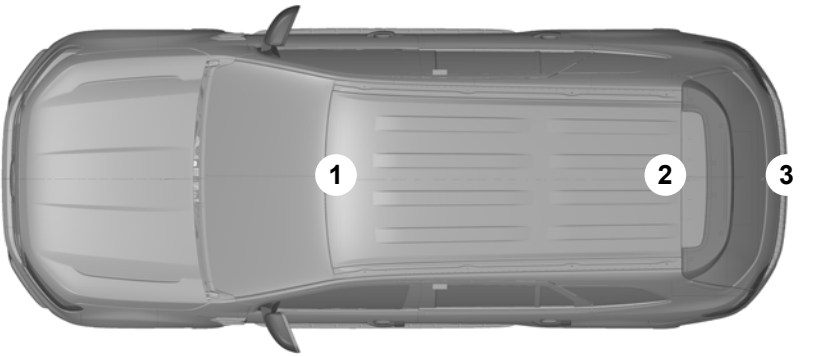
WARNINGS

The radio frequency transmitter equipment, for example cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters, may only be fitted to your vehicle if they keep to the parameters shown in the table below. There are no special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

Do not mount any transceiver, microphones, speakers, or any other item in the deployment path of the airbag system.

Do not fasten antenna cables to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm from any electronic modules and airbags.



E199929

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	100 W	3
50-54	100 W	1
68-87.5	50 W	1
142-176	50 W	1
220-225	50 W	1
380-512	50 W	1
806-940	10 W	1
1200-1400	10 W	1
1710-1885	10 W	1
1885-2025	10 W	1

Note: *After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.*

Check all electrical equipment:

- With the ignition on.
- With the engine running.
- During a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You (“You” or “Your” as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (I) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA: If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS: All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control**: Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (I) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND “AS AVAILABLE”, WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is $75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving $10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

may award the same damages to You individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to You individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy Your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving $75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or $1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than $75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(I) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit http://www.telenav.com from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

I. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,

ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or

iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.
- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors::

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert “Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert “The Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a “commercial item” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use,” and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606
This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.
© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.
End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: "Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Ecuador	"INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION Nº IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011" "source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	"© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre". The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan ("Jordan Data") for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, "Enterprise Applications" shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministèrie de l'Equipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"
Spain	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"
Sweden	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
Switzerland	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.psma.com.au).

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2 , and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

rigCustomer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFROMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2(and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6.240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content") , Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Radio Frequency Statement

FCC ID: ACJ-SYNCG3-L

IC: 216B-SYNCG3-L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.*

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Taiwan Territory

Note: In accordance with the management approach of low-power radio wave radiation motors:

Article 12: For approved and certified low-power radiation motor models, companies, firms or users must not alter the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

Article 14: The usage of low-power radio-frequency motors must not affect aviation safety and interfere with legal telecommunications. Should interference be detected, immediately stop using the device and only resume usage after ensuring that there is no longer any interference. For the legal telecommunication and wireless telecommunication of the telco, the low-power radio frequency motor must be able to tolerate legal limits of interference from telecommunication, industrial, scientific and radio wave equipment.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the "**Suppliers**")) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

TYPE APPROVALS

This equipment operates on a secondary basis, that is, it is not entitled to protection against harmful interference, even from same-type stations, and may not cause interference to systems operating on a primary basis.

RF Certification Logos

Brazil



E207816

Argentina



E207817

Abu Dhabi, Dubai



E197509



E202555

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Brazil

Herby, Schrader Electronics UK Ltd., declares that this TPMS is in compliance with the essential requirements and other provisions of directive 1999/5/EC. The declaration of conformity may be consulted at emcteam@schrader.co.uk

E207818

European Union EU

European Union

CE

Hereby, Panasonic Automotive System, declares that this Ford Audio is in compliance with the essential requirements and the relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. The declaration of conformity may be consulted at coc@ford.com.

Note: *The Type approval label is on the main body of Audio unit.*

E238961

Jordan

Kingdom of Jordon Type approval for tyre pressure sensor.
Model: AG2SZ4
Manufacturer: Schrader Electronics
Type Approval Number: TRC/LPD/2014/56

E207819

RAQP/33A/0514/S/(14-0847)

E207820

Malaysia



E197811

Moldova

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR9098
ANRT 2014
Date d'agrément: 14/03/2014

E207821

Morocco



NTC

Type Approved

No:ESD-1408639C

E198001

Philippines



E197844

Serbia



E207822

Singapore



E198002

South Africa



E203899



E203679

Taiwan



Schrader Electronics цім стверджує, що обладнання Радіопередавач моделі AG2SZ4 системи контролю тиску в шині автомобіла відповідає вимогам Технічного регламенту радіообладнання і телекомунікаційного кінцевого (термінального) обладнання (Постанова КМУ № 679 від 24 червня 2009 р.) Декларація відповідності знаходиться на сайті Schrader Electronics та надається за запитом на електрону адресу doc.request@schrader.co.uk

E198009

Bluetooth

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

iPod

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

SD Card





SD Logo is a trademark.

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

4

4WD
See: Four-Wheel Drive....129

A

A/C
See: Climate Control....86
About This Manual....5
ABS
See: Brakes....131
ABS driving hints
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....131
Accessories
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation....8
ACC
See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control....148
Active Park Assist....141
Deactivating the Active Park Assist Feature....143
Parallel Parking....141
Troubleshooting the System....144
Adjusting the Steering Wheel....39
Air Conditioning
See: Climate Control....86
Air Filter
See: Changing the Engine Air Filter....221
Air Vents....86
Alarm
See: Anti-Theft Alarm....37
Ambient Lighting....50
Anti-Theft Alarm....37
Alarm System....37
Arming the Alarm....38
Disarming the Alarm....38
Full and Reduced Guard....38
Triggering the Alarm....38
Appendices....371
Apps....346
....346
At a Glance....10
Audible Warnings and Indicators....64
Door Ajar....64
Front and Rear Park Aid....65
Headlamps On....64
Key in Ignition....64
Lane Departure Warning....64
Parking Brake On....64
Seatbelt Reminder....64
Audio Control....39
Audio System....244
General Information....244
Audio Troubleshooting....268
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/Aux In/USB/Bluetooth....245
Accessing Your USB Song Library....258
Alternative Frequencies....250
Automatic Volume Control....249
Autostore Control....248
Connecting Your Media Player to the USB Port....258
Digital Signal Processing (DSP)....249
Ford Audio....250
Media Menu Features....257
News Broadcasts....249
On, Off, Volume Control Knob....247
Regional Mode....250
Sound Button....247
Station Preset Buttons....248
Station Tuning Control....248
Traffic Information Control....248
Using Ford Audio With Your Media Player....257
Waveband Button....248
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/ SYNC/Touchscreen Display....262
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/ SYNC....260
Autolamps....45
Automatic Climate Control....91
Type 1....91
Type 2....93
Automatic High Beam Control....45
Switching the System On and Off....46
Automatic Transmission....125
Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning....127
Emergency Park Position Release Lever....126
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow....127
Selector lever positions....125

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

SelectShift™ Automatic Transmission....126
Autowipers....41
Auxiliary Power Points....110
12 Volt DC Power Point....110
230 Volt AC Power Point....110
Location....110

B

Battery
See: Changing the 12V Battery....212
Blind Spot Information System....161
Switching the System Off and On....163
System Errors....163
Using the System....162
Bonnet Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....205
Brake and Clutch Fluid Check....211
Brakes....131
General Information....131
Breaking-In....179
Brakes and Clutch....179
Engine....179
Tires....179
Bulb Specification Chart....220

C

Cabin Air Filter....100
Capacities and Specifications....240
Car Wash
See: Cleaning the Exterior....222
Catalytic Converter....119
Driving with a Catalytic Converter....119
Center Console....112
Changing a Bulb....215
Approach Lamp and Side Repeater....217
Front Fog Lamps....217
Lamp Assembly Condensation....215
Replacing a Reverse Lamp Bulb....219
Replacing the Headlamp Bulbs....216
Replacing the License Plate Lamp Bulb....219
Replacing the Rear Fog Lamp Bulb....219
Replacing the Tail, Brake and Turn Signal Lamp Bulbs....218
Side Repeater....217
Changing a Fuse....203
Fuses....203
Changing a Road Wheel....233
Installing a Road Wheel....237
Jacking and Lifting Points....236
Lug Nuts....233
Removing a Road Wheel....237
Spare Wheel....235
Stowing the Flat Tire....238
Vehicle Jack....233
Changing the 12V Battery....212
Remove and Reinstall the Battery....213
Changing the Engine Air Filter....221
Changing the Wiper Blades....214
Changing the Rear Window Wiper Blade....214
Changing the Windshield Wiper Blades....214
Checking MyKey System Status....29
Checking the Wiper Blades....214
Child Restraint Anchorage Locations....14
Child Restraint Positioning....15
CHECKING SEATBELT FIT....16
Typical Booster Seat....16
Child Restraints....12
....12
Child Safety....12
Child Safety Locks....16
Manual Child Safety Locks....16
Cleaning the Exterior....222
Body Paintwork Preservation....222
Cleaning the Chrome Trim....222
Cleaning the Headlamps....222
Cleaning the Rear Window....222
Cleaning the Running Boards Brightwork Trim....222
Cleaning the Interior....222
Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens....223
Rear Windows....223
Seatbelts....222
Clearing All MyKeys....27
Climate....330
Climate Control....86
Principle of Operation....86
Clock....71
Cold Weather Precautions....184

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Compact Disc Player....263
CD Text Display Options....267
Compact Disc Playback....263
Compact Disc Track Scanning....264
Ending Compact Disc Playback....267
Fast Forward and Reverse....264
MP3 Display Options....267
MP3 File Playback....265
Repeat Compact Disc Tracks....264
Shuffle and Random....264
Track Selection....264
Coolant Check
See: Engine Coolant Check....209
Creating a MyKey....27
Programming/Changing Configurable Settings....27
Cross Traffic Alert....163
False Alerts....165
Switching the System Off and On....166
System Errors....166
System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts....165
System Limitations....165
Using the System....163
Cruise Control....40
Principle of Operation....147
Type 1....40
Type 2....40
Cruise control
See: Using Cruise Control....147
Cup Holders....112

D

Data Recording....7
Daytime Running Lamps....45
Diesel Particulate Filter....115
Regeneration....115
Direction Indicators....48
Doors and Locks....31
DPF
See: Diesel Particulate Filter....115
Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap....211
Driver Alert....155
Principle of Operation....155
Using Driver Alert....156
Driver and Passenger Airbags....21
Driver Knee Airbag....22
Driving Aids....155
Driving Hints....179
Driving Through Water....184
DRL
See: Daytime Running Lamps....45

E

Electromagnetic Compatibility....371
Electronic Locking Differential....130
Activating the Electronic Locking Differential....130
End User License Agreement....373
VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA) 373
Engine Coolant Check....209
Adding Engine Coolant....210
Engine Immobilizer
See: Passive Anti-Theft System....37
Engine Oil Check....209
Adding Oil....209
Engine Oil Dipstick....209
Entertainment....326
Apps....330
Bluetooth Stereo or USB....328
CD....328
DAB+/AM/FM/ Radio....327
Sources....327
Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information....330
USB Ports....330
Essential Towing Checks....174
Before Towing a Trailer....175
Hitches....174
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC)....176
Safety Chains....175
Trailer Brakes....175
Trailer Lamps....175
When Towing a Trailer....175
Event Data Recording
See: Data Recording....7
Exterior Mirrors....54
Blind Spot Monitor....55
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors....55
Heated Exterior Mirrors....55
Power Exterior Mirrors....54
Power-Folding Mirrors....55

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Puddle Lamps 55
Signal Indicator Mirrors....55

F

Fastening the Seatbelts....18
Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy....19
Floor Mats....184
Fog Lamps - Front
See: Front Fog Lamps....46
Fog Lamps - Rear
See: Rear Fog Lamps....47
Four-Wheel Drive....129
Principle of Operation....129
Front Fog Lamps....46
Front Parking Aid....140
Obstacle Distance Indicator....140
Fuel and Refueling....117
Fuel Quality....117
Biodiesel Usage....118
Diesel-Winter Driving....118
Long-Term Storage....118
Fuel Shutoff....186
Fuse Box Locations....191
Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Power Distribution Box - PDB)....191
Fuse Box Locations....191
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box....192
Pre-Fuse Box....191
Fuses....191
Fuse Specification Chart....192
Battery Mounted Fuse Link....199
Engine Compartment Fuse Box....192
High Current Fuse Box....200
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box....200

G

Gauges....58
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge....59
Fuel Gauge....60
Information Display....59
Type 1....58
Type 2....59
Gearbox
See: Transmission....125
General Information on Radio Frequencies....23
Global Opening and Closing....54
Closing the Windows....54
Opening the Windows....54
Glove Box....112
Glove Box with Lock....112

H

Handbrake
See: Parking Brake....132
Hazard Flashers....186
Headlamp Leveling....47
Headlamp Removal
See: Removing a Headlamp....215
Headlamp Washers....43
Head Restraints....101
Heated Seats....109
Front Seats....109
Heated Windows and Mirrors....99
Heated Exterior Mirrors....99
Heated Rear Window....99
Heated Windshield....99
Heating
See: Climate Control....86
Hill Descent Control....137
Principle of Operation....137
Hill Start Assist....132
Enable and Disable the System....133
Switching the System On and Off....133
Using Hill Start Assist....133
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate....94
Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather....97
General Hints....94
Quickly Cooling the Interior....96
Quickly Heating the Interior....95
Recommended Settings for Cooling....96
Recommended Settings for Heating....96
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....131
Home Screen....319
Hood Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....205

I

Ignition Switch....114

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Information Display Control....40
Information Displays....66
General Information....66
Information Messages....73
4WD....73
Active Park....74
Adaptive Cruise Control....75
AdBlue Level....76
AdBlue System Malfunction....76
Airbag....76
Alarm....77
Battery and Charging System....77
Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System....77
Doors and Locks....78
Driver Alert....78
Fuel....79
Hill Descent Control....79
Hill Start Assist....79
Keys and Keyless Entry....80
Lane Keeping System....81
Maintenance....81
Park Aid....82
Park Brake....82
Power Steering....83
Powertrain....83
Starting System....83
Terrain Management System....84
Tire Pressure Monitoring System....84
Transmission....85
Installing Child Restraints....13
Instrument Cluster....58
Instrument Panel Overview....10
Right-hand drive....10
Interior Lamps....48
Cargo Compartment Lamp....50
Front Interior Lamps....49
Glove Box Lamp....50
Rear Interior Lamps....49
Interior Mirror....56
Auto-Dimming Mirror....56
Introduction....5

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle....186
Connecting the Jumper Cables....187
Jump Starting....188
Preparing Your Vehicle....187
Removing the Jumper Cables....188

K

Keys and Remote Controls....23

L

Lane Keeping System....157
Switching the System On and Off....158
Lighting Control....44
Headlamp Flasher....45
Headlamp High Beam....44
Single Side Position lamps....44
Lighting....44
General Information....44
Load Carriers
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers....171
Load Carrying....171
General Information....171
Locking and Unlocking....31
Autolock Configuration....31
Locking and Unlocking the Doors from Inside....32
Locking and Unlocking the Doors Individually with the Key - Vehicles with Central Locking....32
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key....32
Opening the Liftgate....33
Power Door Locks....31
Remote Control....31
Lug Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel....233

M

Maintenance....205
General Information....205
Manual Climate Control....87
Manual Liftgate....33
Closing the Liftgate....34
Opening the Liftgate....34
Manual Seats....102
Adjusting the Height of the Driver Seat....103

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Adjusting the Lumbar Support of the Driver Seat....104
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward....103
Recline Adjustment....103
Media Hub....267
Message Center
See: Information Displays....66
Mirrors
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors....99
See: Windows and Mirrors....51
Mobile Communications Equipment....9
Moonroof....56
Bounce-Back....57
MyKey Troubleshooting....30
MyKey™....26
Principle of Operation....26

N

Navigation....339
Destination Mode....341
Map Mode....339
Navigation Map Updates....346
Navigation Menu....344
Waypoints....345

O

Off-Road Driving....179
After Off-Road Driving....183
Basic Off-road Driving Techniques....181
Crossing Obstacles....183
Driving in Deep Snow....183
Driving in Mud....182
Driving in Sand....182
Hill Climbing....183
Off-Road Driving Aids....181
Off-road Screen....181
Terrain Management System (TMS)....180
Water Wading....183
Oil Check
See: Engine Oil Check....209
Opening and Closing the Hood....205
Closing the Hood....206
Opening the Hood....205
Overhead Console....112

P

Parking Aids....139
Principle of Operation....139
Parking Brake....132
Passive Anti-Theft System....37
Arming the Engine Immobilizer....37
Coded Keys....37
Disarming the Engine Immobilizer....37
Principle of Operation....37
PATS
See: Passive Anti-Theft System....37
Personalized Settings....72
Chime deactivation....72
Languages....72
Measure units....72
MyKey....72
Temperature units....72
Phone....334
During a Phone Call....337
Making Calls....336
Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time....334
Phone Menu....335
Receiving Calls....337
Smartphone Connectivity....338
Text Messaging....338
Post-Crash Alert System....189
Power Door Locks
See: Locking and Unlocking....31
Power Liftgate....34
Closing the Liftgate....35
Programming Liftgate Height....36
Power Seats....104
Power Windows....51
Anti-trap windows....53
Bounce-Back....53
Driver's Door Switches....51
Front and Rear Passengers' Door Switches....52
Opening and Closing Other Windows Automatically....52
Opening and Closing the Driver Side Window Automatically....52
Resetting the Memory of the Electric Windows - Vehicle with One Touch Up/Down on Driver Side only....52
Safety Mode....53

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Safety Switch for the Rear Windows.....52
Pre-Collision Assist.....167
Using the Pre-Collision Assist System.....167

R

Rear Axle.....130
Rear Fog Lamps.....47
Rear Parking Aid.....139
Obstacle Distance Indicator.....140
Rear Passenger Climate Controls.....98
Type 1.....98
Type 2.....99
Rear Seats.....105
Adjusting the Rear Seats.....105
Rear View Camera.....145
Turning the Rear View Camera Off.....146
Turning the Rear View Camera On.....145
Using the Display.....145
Rear View Camera
See: Rear View Camera.....145
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....42
Rear Window Washer.....43
Recommended Towing Weights.....173
Reduced Engine Performance.....179
Refueling.....123
Vehicles with Fuel Filler Cap.....124
Remote Control.....23
Changing the Remote Control Battery.....23
Programming the additional key.....23
Remote Control With a Folding Key Blade.....24
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function.....23
Removing a Headlamp.....215
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....223
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....8
Collision Repairs.....8
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs.....8
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....8
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....25
Roadside Emergencies.....186
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....171
Load Carrying - Roof Loads.....171
Running-In
See: Breaking-In.....179
Running Out of Fuel.....118
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....119
Fuel Run Dry Protection Feature.....118

S

Safety Precautions.....117
Seatbelt Height Adjustment.....19
Seatbelt Maintenance.....20
Seatbelt Reminder.....19
Deactivating the seatbelt reminder.....20
Seatbelts.....17
Principle of Operation.....17
Seats.....101
Security.....37
Selecting a Child Restraint System.....12
.....12
Selective Catalytic Reduction System.....119
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue)Guideline.....119
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue)Level.....120
Inoperative Selective Catalytic Reduction System, Poor Quality or Contaminated Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue).....123
Settings.....347
Ambient Lighting.....357
Bluetooth.....349
Clock.....349
Display.....358
Emergency Assistance.....352
General.....356
Media Player.....348
Mobile Apps.....355
Navigation.....353
Phone.....349
Radio.....352
Sound.....347
Valet Mode.....358
Vehicle.....357
Voice Control.....358
Wi-Fi.....356
Side Airbags.....22
Side Curtain Airbags.....22
Sitting in the Correct Position.....101

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Snow Chains
See: Using Snow Chains....229
Special Notices....8
Speed Control
See: Cruise Control....147
Speed Limiter....155
Principle of Operation....155
Using the System....155
Stability Control....135
Principle of Operation....135
Starter Switch
See: Ignition Switch....114
Starting a Diesel Engine....115
Cold or Hot Engine....115
Failure to Start....115
Starting and Stopping the Engine....114
General Information....114
Steering....166
Electric Power Steering....166
Steering Wheel Lock....114
Unlocking the Steering Wheel....115
Steering Wheel....39
Storage Compartments....112
Sunroof
See: Moonroof....56
Supplementary Restraints System....21
Principle of Operation....21
Switching Off the Engine....116
Vehicles With a Turbocharger....116
Symbols Glossary....5
SYNC™ 3....307
General Information....307
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting....359
SYNC™ Applications and Services....284
In the Event of a Crash....286
Switching Emergency Assistance On and Off....285
SYNC AppLink....288
SYNC Emergency Assistance....285
SYNC™....269
General Information....269
SYNC™ Troubleshooting....297

T

Tailgate
See: Manual Liftgate....33
See: Power Liftgate....34
Technical Specifications
See: Capacities and Specifications....240
Tire Care....224
Tire Care....224
Tire Pressure Monitoring System....229
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System....230
How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures....230
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure....232
Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System....230
Tires
See: Wheels and Tires....224
Tow Ball....176
Driving with a trailer....177
Driving without a trailer....177
Maintenance....177
Tow Ball Hitch Assembly....177
Towing a Trailer....172
Trailer Tow Module....172
Towing Points....190
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels....177
All Vehicles....177
Vehicles With Automatic Transmission....178
Towing....172
Traction Control....134
Principle of Operation....134
Trailer Sway Control....173
Transmission....125
Transporting the Vehicle....189
Trip Computer....72
Average Fuel Consumption....72
Average Speed....72
Digital Speedometer....72
Distance to Empty....72
Instantaneous fuel consumption....72
Odometer....72
Outside Air Temperature....72
Resetting the trip computer....72

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Trip Odometer....72
Type Approvals....397
Bluetooth....399
iPod....399
RF Certification Logos....397
SD Card....400

U

Under Hood Overview - 3.2L Duratorq-TDCi (143kW/194PS) - Puma....207
Using Adaptive Cruise Control....148
Automatic Cancellation....151
Blocked Sensor....153
Canceling the Set Speed....151
Changing the Set Speed....151
Detection Issues....152
Following a Vehicle....149
Hilly Condition Usage....151
Overriding the Set Speed....151
Resuming the Set Speed....151
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed....149
Setting the Gap Distance....150
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off....151
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On....148
Switching to Normal Cruise Control....154
System Not Available....153
Using Cruise Control....147
Switching Cruise Control Off....147
Switching Cruise Control On....147
Using Four-Wheel Drive....129
Using Hill Descent Control....137
HDC Operation....138
Selecting HDC....137
Using Snow Chains....229
Vehicles with Stability Control....229
Using Stability Control....136
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player....291
Accessing Your USB Song Library....295
Bluetooth Devices and System Settings....297
Connecting Your Media Player to the USB Port....291
Media Menu Features....295
Media Voice Commands....292
What's Playing?....292
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone....273
Accessing Features Through the Cell Phone Menu....278
Accessing Your Cell Phone Settings....281
Bluetooth Devices....282
Cell Phone Options During an Active Call....276
Cell Phone Voice Commands....275
Making a Call....276
Pairing a Cell Phone For the First Time....273
Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones....274
Receiving a Call....276
Text Messaging....279
Using Traction Control....134
Using Voice Recognition....271
Audio Voice Commands....320
Climate Voice Commands....321
Initiating a Voice Session....271
Mobile App Voice Commands....324
Navigation Voice Commands....323
Phone Voice Commands....322
System Interaction and Feedback....272
Voice Settings Commands....325

V

Vehicle Care....222
Vehicle Dimensions....240
Vehicle Identification Number....243
Vehicle Identification Plate....242
"Built Date"....242
Ventilation
See: Climate Control....86
Vents
See: Air Vents....86
VIN
See: Vehicle Identification Number....243
Voice Control....40

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators....60
Adaptive Cruise Control Lamp....60
AdBlue Lamp....62

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing

Anti-Lock Braking System Warning Lamp....60
Automatic High Beam Lamp....61
Battery Warning Lamp....61
Blind Spot Monitor Indicator....61
Brake System Warning Lamp....61
Cruise Control Indicator....61
Direction Indicator....61
Door Ajar Indicator....61
Electronic Locking Differential....62
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp....61
Engine Oil Warning Lamp....61
Fasten Rear Seat Belt Warning Lamp....63
Fasten Seat Belt Warning Lamp....62
Four-Wheel Drive Indicators....62
Front Airbag Warning Lamp....62
Front Fog Lamps Indicator....62
Frost Warning Lamp....62
Glow Plug Indicator....62
High Beam Indicator....62
Hill Descent Control....62
Hood Ajar Warning Lamp....62
Lane Keeping Aid Indicator....62
Liftgate Ajar Warning Lamp....62
Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp....63
Low Tire Pressure Warning....63
Low Washer Fluid....63
Over Speed Warning....63
Parking Lamps Indicator....63
Powertrain Fault....63
Rear Fog Lamps Indicator....63
Service Engine Soon....63
Shift Indicator....64
Speed Limiter....64
Stability Control Off Indicator....64
Stability Control Warning Lamp....64
Water-In-Fuel Warning Lamp....64
Washer Fluid Check....211
Washers
See: Cleaning the Exterior....222
See: Wipers and Washers....41
Wheel Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel....233
Wheels and Tires....224
General Information....224
Technical Specifications....239
Windows and Mirrors....51
Windshield Washers....42
Windshield Wipers....41
Intermittent Wipe....41
Speed Dependent Wipers....41
Wiper Blades
See: Checking the Wiper Blades....214
Wipers and Washers....41

Everest (TEC) Australia, EB3B-19G219-YAC enAUS, Edition date: 201605, First Printing